

Everything's possible.

AxCent™ Panel Mount Drives

for Servo Systems

Hardware Installation Manual



Preface

ADVANCED Motion Controls constantly strives to improve all of its products. We review the information in this document regularly and we welcome any suggestions for improvement. We reserve the right to modify equipment and documentation without prior notice.

For the most recent software, the latest revisions of this manual, and copies of compliance and declarations of conformity, visit the company's website at www.a-m-c.com. Otherwise, contact the company directly at:

ADVANCED Motion Controls • 3805 Calle Tecate Camarillo, CA • 93012-5068 USA

Agency Compliances

The company holds original documents for the following:

- UL 508c, UL 61800-5-1 file number E140173
- Electromagnetic Compatibility, EMC Directive - 2014/30/EU
EN61000-6-2:2005
EN61000-6-4:2007/A1:2011
Electrical Safety, Low Voltage Directive - 2014/35/EU
EN 60204-1:2006/A1:2009
- Reduction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS III), 2015/863/EU

Trademarks

ADVANCED Motion Controls®, the combined isosceles trapezoid/right triangle logo, **DIGIFLEX®**, **DIGIFLEX® Performance™**, DriveWare® and AxCent™ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of *ADVANCED* Motion Controls in the United States and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Related Documentation

- Product datasheet specific for your drive, available for download at www.a-m-c.com.

Attention Symbols

The following symbols are used throughout this document to draw attention to important operating information, special instructions, and cautionary warnings. The section below outlines the overall directive of each symbol and what type of information the accompanying text is relaying.



Note

Note - Pertinent information that clarifies a process, operation, or ease-of-use preparations regarding the product.



Notice

Notice - Required instruction necessary to ensure successful completion of a task or procedure.



Caution

Caution - Instructs and directs you to avoid damaging equipment.



Warning

Warning - Instructs and directs you to avoid harming yourself.



DANGER

Danger - Presents information you must heed to avoid serious injury or death.

Revision History

Document ID	Revision #	Date	Changes
MNACHWIN-01	1	3/2016	AxCent Product Family Hardware Installation Manual First Release
MNACHWIN-02	2	9/2016	Added AB50A200 Drive Model Information
MNACHWIN-03	3	11/2016	Added AB30A100, AB50A100 and AB30A200 Drive Model Information
MNACHWIN-04	4	3/2017	Added ABDC30A100 and AB50A200I Drive Model Information
MNACHWIN-05	5	4/2017	Added AB30A200I Drive Model Information
MNACHWIN-06	6	8/2017	Added AB30A200AC Drive Model Information

© 2018 *ADVANCED* Motion Controls. All rights reserved.



Contents

1 Safety **1**

1.1 General Safety Overview	1
-----------------------------------	---

2 Products and System Requirements **4**

2.1 AxCent™ Drive Family Overview	4
2.1.1 Products Covered	4
Drive Datasheet	4
2.2 Analog PWM Servo Drive Basics and Theory	5
2.2.1 Single Phase (Brushed) Servo Drives	6
2.2.2 Three Phase (Brushless) Servo Drives	6
2.3 Power Stage Specifications	8
2.4 Command Inputs	9
2.4.1 ±10V Analog	9
2.4.2 PWM and Direction	9
2.5 Feedback Specifications	10
2.5.1 Feedback Polarity	10
2.5.2 Incremental Encoder	10
2.5.3 Hall Sensors	11
2.5.4 Tachometer	12
2.6 Modes of Operation	13
2.6.1 Current (Torque) Mode	13
2.6.2 Duty Cycle (Open Loop) Mode	13
2.6.3 Hall Velocity Mode	13
2.6.4 Encoder Velocity Mode	14
2.6.5 Tachometer Velocity Mode	14
2.6.6 Voltage Mode	14

2.6.7 IR Compensation Mode	15
2.7 System Requirements	15
2.7.1 Analog Servo Drive Selection and Sizing	15
Motor Current and Voltage	15
Motor Inductance	18
2.7.2 Power Supply Selection and Sizing	18
Power Supply Current and Voltage	19
Isolation	21
Regeneration and Shunt Regulators	22
Voltage Ripple	24
2.7.3 Environmental Specifications	25
Ambient Temperature Range and Thermal Data	25
Shock/Vibrations	26

3 Integration in the Servo System

28

3.1 LVD Requirements	28
3.2 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements	29
General	29
Analog Input Drives	29
PWM Input Drives	29
MOSFET Switching Drives	29
IGBT Switching Drives	29
Fitting of AC Power Filters	29
3.2.1 Ferrite Suppression Core Set-up	30
3.2.2 Inductive Filter Cards	30
3.3 Grounding	31
3.4 Wiring	32
3.4.1 Wire Gauge	32
3.4.2 Motor Wires	33
3.4.3 Power Supply Wires	33
DC Power Supplies	34
Three Phase AC Power Supplies	35
Single Phase AC Power Supplies	35
3.4.4 Feedback Wires	35
Hall Sensors	35
Incremental Encoder	36
Tachometer	36
3.4.5 Input Reference Wires	37

±10V Analog Input	37
PWM and Direction Inputs	38
Potentiometer Input	38
3.5 Mounting	38

4 Operation **39**

4.1 Initial Setup and Features	39
4.1.1 Pin Function Details	39
Current Monitor Output	39
Current Reference Output	40
Inhibit / Enable Input	40
Fault Output	40
Low Voltage Power Supply Outputs	41
Velocity Monitor Output	41
4.1.2 Potentiometer Function Details	41
Test Points for Potentiometers	42
Potentiometer Tool	42
4.1.3 Switch Function Details	43
4.1.4 Tachometer Input Gain Scaling	43
4.1.5 Current Limiting Procedure	44
4.1.6 Drive Set-up Instructions	45
Single Phase (Brush Type)	45
Three Phase (Brushless)	46
Three Phase (Brushless) Drive with Brushed Motor	47
4.1.7 Current Loop Tuning Procedure	47
Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment	48
Current Loop Integrator Adjustment	49
Voltage or Velocity Loop Tuning	50
Analog Position Loop	50

A Additional Tuning **51**

A.1 Tuning DIP Switches	52
A.2 Through-Hole Tuning	52
A.3 Procedure	53
Tune the Current Loop Proportional Gain	53

Tune the Current Loop Integral Gain	54
Velocity Loop Integral Gain Tuning	55

B Troubleshooting **56**

B.1 Fault Conditions and Symptoms	56
Over-Temperature	56
Over-Voltage Shutdown	56
Under-Voltage Shutdown	57
Short Circuit Fault	57
Invalid Hall Sensor State (Brushless Drives only)	57
Inhibit Input	57
Power-On Reset	57
B.1.1 Overload	57
B.1.2 Current Limiting	58
Non-Foldback Current Limiting	59
B.1.3 Motor Problems	59
B.1.4 Causes of Erratic Operation	60
B.2 Technical Support	60
B.2.1 Drive Model Information	60
B.3 Warranty Returns and Factory Help	61

Index I

1 Safety

This section discusses characteristics of your analog servo drive to raise your awareness of potential risks and hazards. The severity of consequences ranges from frustration of performance, through damage to equipment, injury or death. These consequences, of course, can be avoided by good design and proper installation into your mechanism.

1.1 General Safety Overview

In order to install an analog drive into a servo system, you must have a thorough knowledge and understanding of basic electronics, computers and mechanics as well as safety precautions and practices required when dealing with the possibility of high voltages or heavy, strong equipment.

Observe your facility's lock-out/tag-out procedures so that work can proceed without residual power stored in the system or unexpected movements by the machine.



Notice

You must install and operate motion control equipment so that you meet all applicable safety requirements. Ensure that you identify the relevant standards and comply with them. Failure to do so may result in damage to equipment and personal injury.

Read this entire manual prior to attempting to install or operate the drive. Become familiar with practices and procedures that allow you to operate these drives safely and effectively. You are responsible for determining the suitability of this product for the intended application. The manufacturer is neither responsible nor liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the inappropriate use of this product.



Caution

Over current protective devices recognized by an international safety agency must be installed in line before the servo drive. These devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the device installation instructions and the specifications of the servo drive (taking into consideration inrush currents, etc.). Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over current protection in the end user's equipment.



Notice

High-performance motion control equipment can move rapidly with very high forces. Unexpected motion may occur especially during product commissioning. Keep clear of any operational machinery and never touch them while they are working.



Warning

Keep clear of all exposed power terminals (motor, DC Bus, shunt, DC power, transformer) when power is applied to the equipment. Follow these safety guidelines:

- Always turn off the main power and allow sufficient time for complete discharge before making any connections to the drive.
- Do not rotate the motor shaft without power. The motor acts as a generator and will charge up the power supply capacitors through the drive. Excessive speeds may cause over-voltage breakdown in the power output stage. Note that a drive having an internal power converter that operates from the high voltage supply will become operative.
- Do not short the motor leads at high motor speeds. When the motor is shorted, its own generated voltage may produce a current flow as high as 10 times the drive current. The short itself may not damage the drive but may damage the motor. If the connection arcs or opens while the motor is spinning rapidly, this high voltage pulse flows back into the drive (due to stored energy in the motor inductance) and may damage the drive.
- Do not make any connections to any internal circuitry. Only connections to designated connectors are allowed.
- Do not make any connections to the drive while power is applied.



Caution

- Do not reverse the power supply leads! Severe damage will result!
- If using relays or other means to disconnect the motor leads, be sure the drive is disabled before reconnecting the motor leads to the drive. Connecting the motor leads to the drive while it is enabled can generate extremely high voltage spikes which will damage the drive.



Caution

Use sufficient capacitance!

Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) drives require a capacitor on the high voltage supply to store energy during the PWM switching process. Insufficient power supply capacitance causes problems particularly with high inductance motors. During braking much of the stored mechanical energy is fed back into the power supply and charges its output capacitor to a higher voltage. If the charge reaches the drive's over-voltage shutdown point, output current and braking will cease. At that time energy stored in the motor inductance continues to flow through diodes in the drive to further charge the power supply capacitance. The voltage rise depends upon the power supply capacitance, motor speed, and inductance.



Caution

Make sure minimum inductance requirements are met!

Pulse Width modulation (PWM) servo drives deliver a pulsed output that requires a minimum amount of load inductance to ensure that the DC motor current is properly filtered. The minimum inductance values for different drive types are shown in the individual data sheet specifications. If the drive is operated below its maximum rated voltage, the minimum load inductance requirement may be reduced. Most servo-motors have enough winding inductance. Some types of motors (e.g. "basket-wound", "pancake", etc.) do not have a conventional iron core rotor, so the winding inductance is usually less than 50 μ H.

If the motor inductance value is less than the minimum required for the selected drive, use an external filter card.

2 Products and System Requirements

This chapter is intended as a guide and general overview in selecting, installing, and operating an AxCent™ family servo drive. Contained within are instructions on system integration, wiring, drive-setup, and standard operating methods.

2.1 AxCent™ Drive Family Overview

The AxCent drive family contains drives that power both Single Phase (Brushed) and Three Phase (Brushless) motors. AxCent drives are powered off either a single DC or AC power supply, and accept either $\pm 10V$ analog or PWM and Direction signals. A digital controller can be used to command and interact with AxCent servo drives, and a number of input/output pins are available for parameter observation and drive configuration.

2.1.1 Products Covered

The drives in the tables below are the standard product line of *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' AxCent servo drives. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' Sales Department for further information and details on custom drive solutions.

TABLE 2.1 DC Drives

Drive Number	VDC (Nominal)	Peak Current (A)	Cont. Current (A)
AB15A100	20-80	15	7.5
AB25A100	20-80	25	15
AB30A100	20-80	30	15
ABDC30A100	20-80	30	15
AB50A100	20-80	50	25
AB20A200	40-175	20	12
AB30A200	40-175	30	15
AB30A200I	40-175	30	15
AB50A200	40-175	50	25
AB50A200I	40-175	50	25
B30A40	60-400	30	15

TABLE 2.2 AC Drives¹

Drive Number	VAC (Nominal)	Peak Current (A)	Cont. Current (A)
AB30A200AC	30-125	30	15
B30A40AC	45-265	30	15
B060A400AC	200-240	60	30
B100A400AC	200-240	100	50

1. Certain AC drive models can also accept a DC power supply. Consult the drive datasheet to determine if DC input is allowed.

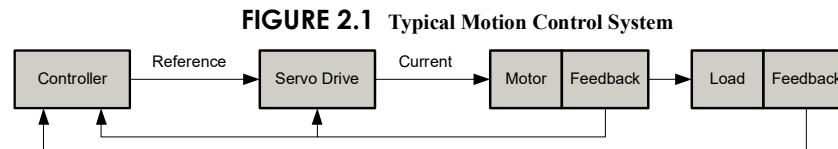
Drive Datasheet 2. Each AxCent drive has a separate datasheet that contains important information on the modes and product-specific features available with that particular

drive, including the functional block diagram of the specific drive's operation. The datasheet is to be used in conjunction with this manual for system design and installation.

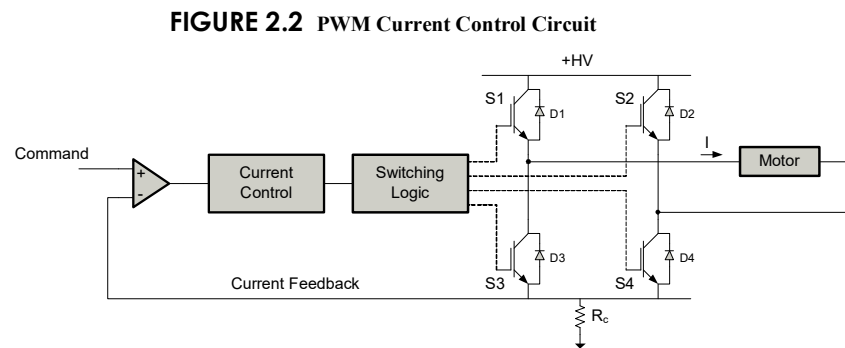
2.2 Analog PWM Servo Drive Basics and Theory

Analog servo drives are used extensively in motion control systems where precise control of position and/or velocity is required. The drive transmits the low-energy reference signals from the controller into high-energy signals (motor voltage and current). The reference signals can be either analog or digital, with a ± 10 VDC signal being the most common. The signal can represent either a motor torque or velocity demand.

Figure 2.1 shows the components typically used in a servo system (i.e. a feedback system used to control position, velocity, and/or acceleration). The controller contains the algorithms to close the desired servo loops and also handles machine interfacing (inputs/outputs, terminals, etc.). The drive represents the electronic power converter that drives the motor according to the controller reference signals. The motor (which can be of the brushed or brushless type, rotary, or linear) is the actual electromagnetic actuator, which generates the forces required to move the load. Feedback elements are mounted on the motor and/or load in order to close the servo loop.



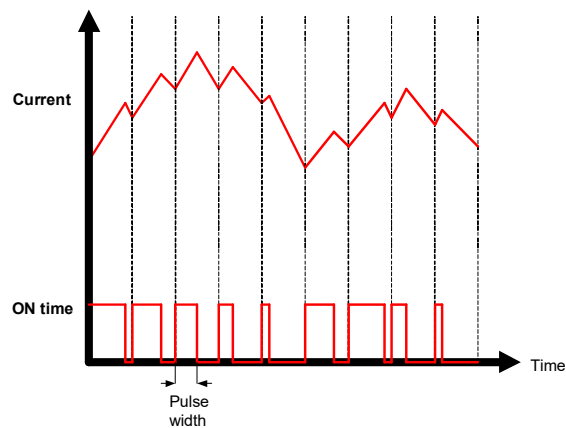
Although there exist many ways to "amplify" electrical signals, pulse width modulation (PWM) is by far the most efficient and cost-effective approach. At the basis of a PWM servo drive is a current control circuit that controls the output current by varying the duty cycle of the output power stage (fixed frequency, variable duty cycle). Figure 2.2 shows a typical setup for a single phase load.



S1, S2, S3, and S4 are power devices (MOSFET or IGBT) that can be switched on or off. D1, D2, D3, and D4 are diodes that guarantee current continuity. The bus voltage is depicted by +HV. The resistor R_c is used to measure the actual output current. For electric motors, the load is typically inductive due to the windings used to generate electromagnetic fields. The current can be regulated in both directions by activating the appropriate switches. When switch S1 and S4

(or S2 and S3) are activated, current will flow in the positive (or negative) direction and increase. When switch S1 is off and switch S4 is on (or S2 off and S3 on) current will flow in the positive (or negative) direction and decrease (via one of the diodes). The switch "ON" time is determined by the difference between the current demand and the actual current. The current control circuit will compare both signals every time interval (typically 50 μ sec or less) and activate the switches accordingly (this is done by the switching logic circuit, which also performs basic protection functions). Figure 2.3 shows the relationship between the pulse width (ON time) and the current pattern. The current rise time will depend on the bus voltage (+HV) and the load inductance. Therefore, certain minimum load inductance requirements are necessary depending on the bus voltage.

FIGURE 2.3 Output Current and Duty Cycle Relationship



2.2.1 Single Phase (Brushed) Servo Drives

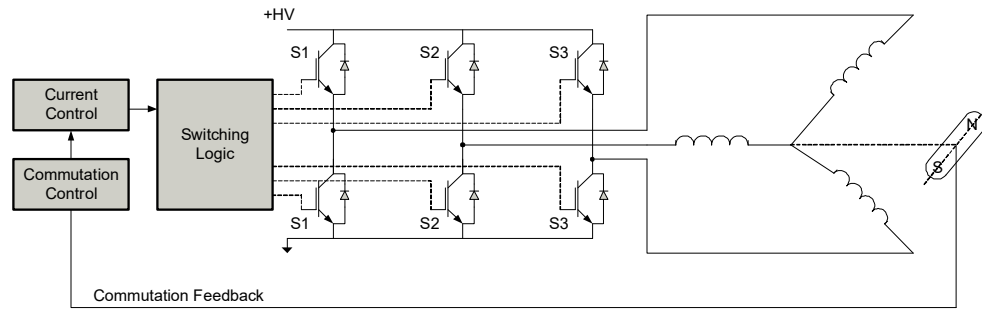
Brushed type servo drives are designed for use with permanent magnet brushed DC motors (PMDC motors). The drive construction is basically as shown in Figure 2.2. PMDC motors have a single winding (armature) on the rotor, and permanent magnets on the stator (no field winding). Brushes and commutators maintain the optimum torque angle. The torque generated by a PMDC motor is proportional to the current, giving it excellent dynamic control capabilities in motion control systems.

Brushed drives can also be used to control current in other inductive loads such as voice coil actuators, magnetic bearings, etc.

2.2.2 Three Phase (Brushless) Servo Drives

Three Phase (brushless) servo drives are used with brushless servo motors. These motors typically have a three-phase winding on the stator and permanent magnets on the rotor. Brushless motors require commutation feedback for proper operation (the commutators and brushes perform this function on brush type motors). This feedback consists of rotor magnetic field orientation information, supplied either by magnetic field sensors (Hall Effect sensors) or position sensors (encoder or resolver). Brushless motors have better power density ratings than brushed motors because heat is generated in the stator, resulting in a shorter thermal path to the outside environment. Figure 2.4 shows a typical system configuration.

FIGURE 2.4 Brushless Servo System



2.3 Power Stage Specifications

The drive datasheet lists the specific values for the following drive power specifications. Note that not all specifications apply to every drive.

TABLE 2.3 Power Stage Specifications

Specification	Units	Description
DC Supply Voltage Range	VDC	Specifies the acceptable DC supply voltage range that the drive will operate within.
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	VDC	Specifies the maximum DC supply voltage allowable. If the DC bus rises above the over voltage limit, the drive will automatically disable, and will not re-enable until the DC bus voltage falls below the over voltage limit.
AC Supply Voltage Range	VAC	Specifies the acceptable AC supply voltage range that the drive will operate within.
AC Supply Frequency	Hz	Specifies the acceptable frequency of the AC supply line.
Maximum Peak Output Current	A	Pertains to the maximum peak current the drive can output according to hardware limitations. An RMS rating can be obtained by dividing this value by $\sqrt{2}$. With the exception of S-series drives, the maximum peak output duration is inherently limited to occur for no longer than 2 seconds, at which point the current output will foldback over a period of 10 seconds to the continuous current limit in order to protect the motor in stalled condition. Current limiting is implemented in the drive by reducing the output voltage. Most drive models feature peak current limit adjustments. The maximum peak current is needed for fast acceleration and deceleration. Consult the drive datasheet to see which options are available. For more information on the current limit see "Current Limiting Procedure" on page 44 .
Maximum Continuous Output Current	A	Pertains to the maximum continuous current the drive can output according to hardware limitations. An RMS rating can be obtained by dividing this value by $\sqrt{2}$. Most drive models feature continuous current limit adjustments by the use of DIP switches or a potentiometer. Some models also allow an external resistor to be connected between a continuous current limiting pin and signal ground as an additional method of current limiting. Consult the drive datasheet to see which options are available. For more information on setting the current limit see "Current Limiting Procedure" on page 44 .
Maximum Power Dissipation at Continuous Current	W	The power dissipation of the drive, assuming approximately 5% power loss to heat dissipation. Calculated by taking 5% of $P=V \cdot I$ at continuous current and peak bus voltage.
Internal Bus Capacitance	μ F	The capacitance value between the internal DC bus voltage and power ground.
Internal Shunt Resistance	Ω	The resistance value of the internal shunt resistor.
Internal Shunt Resistor Power Rating	W	The power rating of the internal shunt resistor.
Internal Shunt Resistor Turn-on Voltage	VDC	The turn-on voltage of the internal shunt resistor.
Minimum Load Inductance	μ H	The minimum inductance needed at the output of the drive for proper operation. For a brushless motor, this corresponds to the phase-to-phase inductance. If this minimum inductance is not met, a filter card should be used to add additional inductance. Some motors may operate with slightly less than the required inductance if the bus voltage is low enough. <i>ADVANCED</i> Motion Controls provides various accessories including inductive filter cards for a wide range of drives. See "Inductive Filter Cards" on page 30 for more information.
Shunt Fuse	A	The current rating of the internal shunt resistor fuse.
Bus Fuse	A	The current rating of the input AC line fuses.
Switching Frequency	kHz	The switching frequency of the drive output power stage.

2.4 Command Inputs

The input command source for AxCent servo drives is provided by the following.

2.4.1 $\pm 10V$ Analog

A differential or single-ended $\pm 10V$ analog reference signal can be used to command the drive by adjusting the motor current, voltage, or speed, depending on the mode the drive is operating in. For information on the proper wiring of a $\pm 10V$ analog input, see [“Input Reference Wires” on page 37](#).

2.4.2 PWM and Direction

PWM and Direction Input is a specialized type of command that requires a compatible controller. The controller needs two high speed TTL digital outputs to control these drives, one for PWM and the other for Direction. The PWM duty cycle corresponds to the magnitude of the output. Direct control of the PWM switching puts response times in the sub-microsecond range. The PWM input goes into a PWM-to-Analog converter. The analog signal is then used as a command into the current loop, resulting in a Current Mode drive controlled with PWM and Direction. For information on the proper wiring of a PWM and Direction input, see [“PWM and Direction Inputs” on page 38](#).

2.5 Feedback Specifications

There are a number of different feedback options available in the family of analog drives. The feedback component can be any device capable of generating a voltage signal proportional to current, velocity, position, or any parameter of interest. Such signals can be provided directly by a potentiometer or indirectly by other feedback devices such as Hall Sensors or Encoders. These latter devices must have their signals converted to a DC voltage, a task performed by the drive circuitry.

Consult a specific drive datasheet to see which feedback devices are available for that drive.

2.5.1 Feedback Polarity

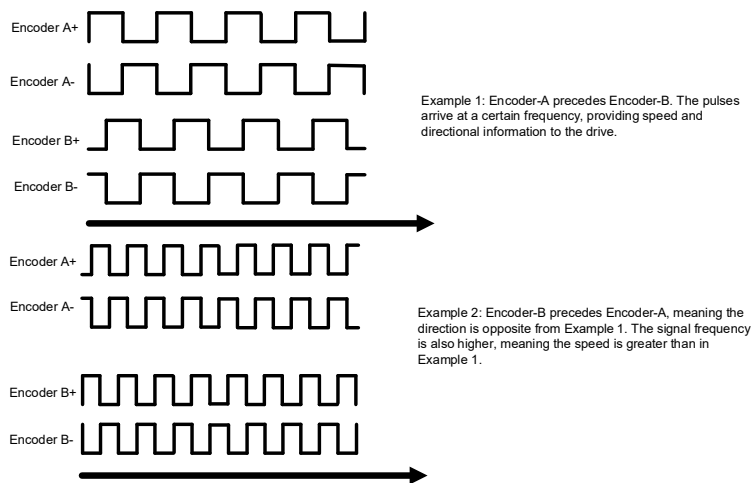
The feedback element must be connected for *negative* feedback. This will cause a difference between the command signal and the feedback signal, called the *error signal*. The drive compares the feedback signal to the command signal to produce the required output to the load by continually reducing the error signal to zero. This becomes important when using an incremental encoder or Hall sensors, as connecting these feedback elements for positive feedback will lead to a motor "run-away" condition. In a case where the feedback lines are connected to the drive with the wrong polarity in either Hall Velocity or Encoder Velocity Mode, the drive will attempt to correct the "error signal" by applying more command to the motor. With the wrong feedback polarity, this will result in a positive feedback run-away condition. To correct this, either change the order that the feedback lines are connected to the drive, or consult the drive datasheet for the appropriate switch on the DIP switch bank that reverses the internal feedback velocity polarity. See the drive datasheet and ["Switch Function Details" on page 43](#) for more information on DIP switch settings.

2.5.2 Incremental Encoder

Analog servo drives that use encoder feedback utilize two single-ended or differential incremental encoder inputs for velocity control. The encoder provides incremental position feedback that can be extrapolated into very precise velocity information. The encoder signals are read as "pulses" that the drive uses to essentially keep track of the motor's position and direction of rotation. Based on the speed and order in which these pulses are received from the two encoder signals, the drive can interpret the motor velocity.

[Figure 2.5](#) represents differential encoder "pulse" signals, showing how depending on which signal is read first and at what frequency the "pulses" arrive, the speed and direction of the motor shaft can be extrapolated. By keeping track of the number of encoder "pulses" with respect to a known motor "home" position, servo drives are able to ascertain the actual motor location.

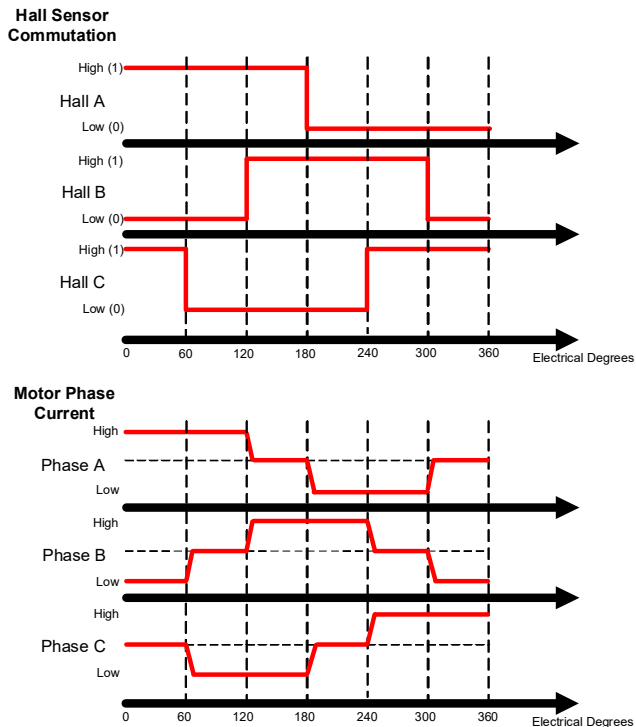
FIGURE 2.5 Encoder Feedback Signals



2.5.3 Hall Sensors

Three Phase (Brushless) drives use Hall Sensors for commutation feedback, and in the special case of some drives, for velocity control. The Hall Sensors are built into the motor to detect the position of the rotor magnetic field. These sensors are mounted such that they each generate a square wave with either a 120-degree or 60-degree phase difference over one electrical cycle of the motor.

FIGURE 2.6 Hall Sensor Commutation and Motor Phase Current for 120-Degree Phasing



Note: Not all ADVANCED Motion Controls' servo drive series use the same commutation logic. The commutation diagrams provided here should be used only with drives covered within this manual.

Depending on the motor pole count, there may be more than one electrical cycle for every motor revolution. For every actual mechanical motor revolution, the number of electrical cycles will be the number of motor poles divided by two. For example:

- a 6-pole motor contains 3 electrical cycles per motor revolution
- a 4-pole motor contains 2 electrical cycles per motor revolution
- a 2-pole motor contains 1 electrical cycle per motor revolution

The drive powers two of the three motor phases with DC current during each specific Hall Sensor state:

The table below shows the valid commutation states for both 120-degree and 60-degree phasing.

TABLE 2.4 Commutation Sequence Table

	60 Degree			120 Degree			Motor		
	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Phase A	Phase B	Phase C
Valid	1	0	0	1	0	0	HIGH	-	LOW
	1	1	0	1	1	0	-	HIGH	LOW
	1	1	1	0	1	0	LOW	HIGH	-
	0	1	1	0	1	1	LOW	-	HIGH
	0	0	1	0	0	1	-	LOW	HIGH
	0	0	0	1	0	1	HIGH	LOW	-
Invalid	1	0	1	1	1	1	-	-	-
	0	1	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

2.5.4 Tachometer

A DC Tachometer can be used on some drives for velocity control. The tachometer provides an analog DC voltage feedback signal that is related to the actual motor speed and direction. The drive subsequently adjusts the output current based on the error between the tachometer feedback and the input command voltage. The maximum range of the tachometer feedback signal is ± 60 VDC.

Some applications may require an increase in the gain of the tachometer input signal. This occurrence will be most common in designs where the tachometer input has a low voltage to RPM scaling ratio. Some drive models offer a through-hole location listed on the specific drive datasheet where a resistor can be added to increase the tachometer gain. Use the drive’s block diagram to determine an appropriate resistor value.

See [“Tachometer Input Gain Scaling” on page 43](#) for more information.

2.6 Modes of Operation

The AxCent drive family offers a variety of different control methods. While some drives in the series are designed to operate solely in one mode, on other drives it is possible to select the control method by DIP switch settings. Consult the datasheet for the drive in use to see which modes are available for use.

The name of the mode refers to which servo loop is being closed in the drive, not the end-result of the application. For instance, a drive operating in Current (Torque) Mode may be used for a positioning application if the external controller is closing the position loop. Oftentimes, mode selection will be dependent on the requirements and capabilities of the controller being used with the drive as well as the end-result application.

2.6.1 Current (Torque) Mode

In Current (Torque) Mode, the input command voltage controls the output current. The drive will adjust the output duty cycle to maintain the commanded output current. This mode is used to control torque for rotary motors (force for linear motors), but the motor speed is not controlled. The output current can be monitored through an analog current monitor output pin. The voltage value read at the “Current Monitor Output” can be multiplied by a scaling factor found on the drive datasheet to determine the actual output current.



Note

While in Current (Torque) Mode, the drive will maintain a commanded torque output to the motor based on the input reference command. Sudden changes in the motor load may cause the drive to be outputting a high torque command with little load resistance, causing the motor to spin rapidly. Therefore, Current (Torque) Mode is recommended for applications using a digital position controller to maintain system stability.

2.6.2 Duty Cycle (Open Loop) Mode

In Duty Cycle Mode, the input command voltage controls the output PWM duty cycle of the drive, indirectly controlling the output voltage. Note that any fluctuations of the DC supply voltage will affect the voltage output to the motor.



Note

This mode is recommended as a method of controlling the motor velocity when precise velocity control is not critical to the application, and when actual velocity feedback is unavailable.

2.6.3 Hall Velocity Mode

In Hall Velocity Mode, the input command voltage controls the motor velocity, with the Hall Sensor frequency closing the velocity loop. An analog velocity monitor output allows

observation of the actual motor speed through a Hz/V scaling factor found on the drive datasheet. The voltage value read at the velocity monitor output can be used to determine the motor RPM through the scaling factor. See “[Velocity Monitor Output](#)” on page 41 for the motor RPM equation.



Note

Due to the inherent low resolution of motor mounted Hall Sensors, Hall Velocity Mode is not recommended for low-speed applications below 300 rpm for a 6-pole motor, 600 rpm for a 4-pole motor, or 900 rpm for a 2-pole motor. Hall Velocity Mode is better suited for velocity control applications where the motor will be spinning at higher speeds.

2.6.4 Encoder Velocity Mode

In Encoder Velocity Mode, the input command controls the motor velocity, with the frequency of the encoder pulses closing the velocity loop. An analog velocity monitor output allows observation of the actual motor speed through a kHz/V scaling factor found on the drive datasheet. The voltage value read at the velocity monitor output can be used to determine the motor RPM through the scaling factor. See “[Velocity Monitor Output](#)” on page 41 for the motor RPM equation.



Note

The high resolution of motor mounted encoders allows for excellent velocity control and smooth motion at all speeds. Encoder Velocity Mode should be used for applications requiring precise and accurate velocity control, and is especially useful in applications where low-speed smoothness is the objective.

2.6.5 Tachometer Velocity Mode

In Tachometer Velocity Mode, the input command voltage controls the motor velocity. This mode uses an external DC tachometer to close the velocity loop. The drive translates the DC voltage from the tachometer into motor speed and direction information.



Note

DC Tachometers have infinite resolution, allowing for extremely accurate velocity control. However, they also may be susceptible to electrical noise, most notably at low speeds.

2.6.6 Voltage Mode

In Voltage Mode the input reference signal commands a proportional motor voltage regardless of power supply voltage variations. This mode is recommended for velocity control when velocity feedback is unavailable and load variances are small.

2.6.7 IR Compensation Mode

If there is a load torque variation while in Voltage Mode, the motor current will also vary as torque is proportional to motor current. Hence, the motor terminal voltage will be reduced by the voltage drop over the motor winding resistance (IR), resulting in a speed reduction. Thus, motor speed, which is proportional to motor voltage (terminal voltage minus IR drop) varies with the load torque.

In order to compensate for the internal motor voltage drop, a voltage proportional to motor current can be added to the output voltage. An internal resistor adjusts the amount of compensation, and an additional SMT or through-hole resistor can be added to a location on the drive. Consult the drive datasheet to see which IR Compensation resistor option is available. Use caution when adjusting the IR compensation level. If the feedback voltage is high enough to cause a rise in motor voltage with increased motor current, instability occurs. Such a result is due to the fact that increased voltage increases motor speed and thus load current which, in turn, increases motor voltage. If a great deal of motor torque change is anticipated, it may be wise to consider the addition of a speed sensor to the motor (e.g. tachometer, encoder, etc.).

2.7 System Requirements

To successfully incorporate an analog servo drive into your system, you must be sure it will operate properly based on electrical, mechanical, and environmental specifications, follow some simple wiring guidelines, and perhaps make use of some accessories in anticipating impacts on performance. Before selecting an analog servo drive, a user should consider the requirements of their system. This involves calculating the required voltage, current, torque, and power requirements of the system, as well as considering the operating environment and any other equipment the drive will be interfacing with.

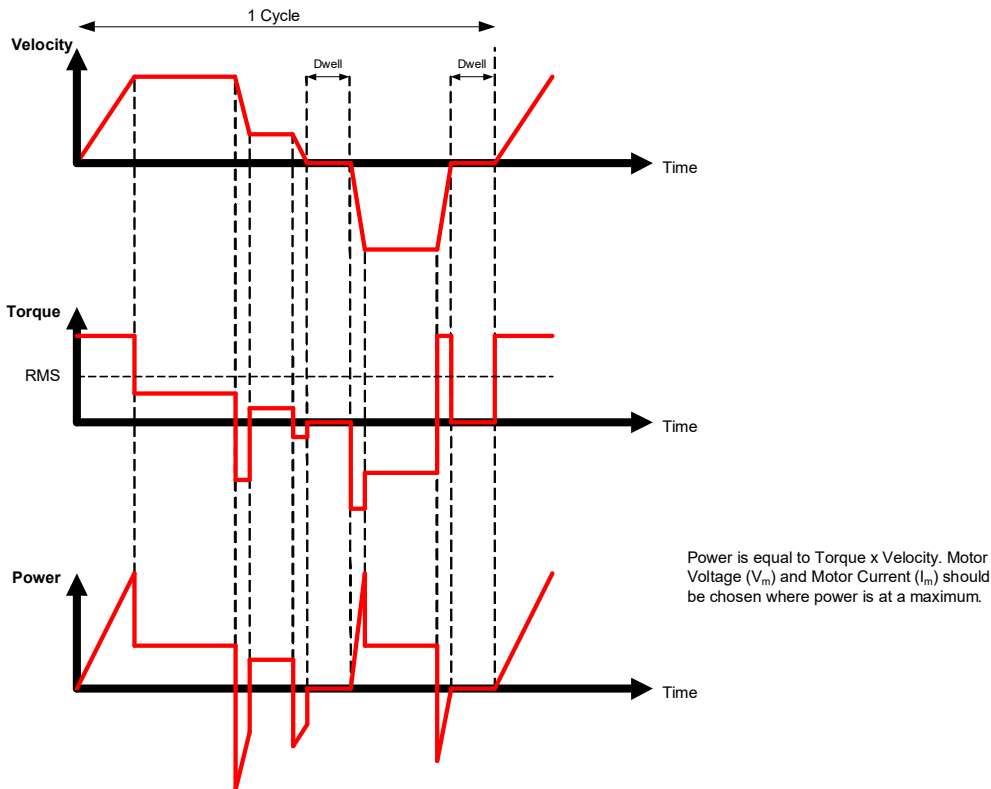
2.7.1 Analog Servo Drive Selection and Sizing

Analog servo drives have a given current and voltage rating unique to each drive. Based on the necessary application requirements and the information from the datasheet of the motor being used, a drive may be selected that will best suit the motor capabilities.

A drive should be selected that will meet the peak and continuous current requirements of the application, and operate within the voltage requirements of the system.

Motor Current and Voltage Motor voltage and current requirements are determined based on the maximum required torque and velocity. These requirements can be derived from the application move profiles (Figure 2.7).

FIGURE 2.7 Example Velocity, Torque, and Power Curves



The **motor current I_M** is the required motor current in amps DC, and is related to the torque needed to move the load by the following equation:

$$I_M = \frac{\text{Torque}}{K_T}$$

Where:

K_T -motor torque constant

The motor current will need to be calculated for both continuous and peak operation. The peak torque will be during the acceleration portion of the move profile.

The continuous torque is the average torque required by the system during the move profile, including dwell times. Both peak torque and continuous, or RMS (root mean square) torque

need to be calculated. RMS torque can be calculated by plotting torque versus time for one move cycle.

$$T_{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_i T_i^2 t_i}{\sum_i t_i}}$$

Here T_i is the torque and t_i is the time during segment i . In the case of a vertical application make sure to include the torque required to overcome gravity.

The system voltage requirement is based on the motor properties and how fast and hard the motor is driven. The system voltage requirement is equal to the **motor voltage, V_m** , required to achieve the move profile. In general, the motor voltage is proportional to the motor speed and the motor current is proportional to the motor shaft torque. Linear motors exhibit the same behavior except that in their case force is proportional to current. These relationships are described by the following equations:

$$V_m = I_m R_m + E$$

$$E = K_e S_m$$

for rotary motors $T = K_t I_m$

for linear motors $F = K_f I_m$

Where:

V_m	-motor voltage
I_m	-motor current (use the maximum current expected for the application)
R_m	-motor line-to-line resistance
E	-motor back-EMF voltage
T	-motor torque
F	-motor force
K_t	-motor torque constant
K_f	-motor force constant
K_e	-voltage constant
S_m	-motor speed (use the maximum speed expected for the application)

The motor manufacturer's data sheet contain K_t (or K_f) and K_e constants. Pay special attention to the units used (metric vs. English) and the amplitude specifications (peak-to-peak vs. RMS, phase-to-phase vs. phase-to-neutral).

The maximum motor terminal voltage and current can be calculated from the above equations. For example, a motor with a $K_e = 10V/Krpm$ and required speed of 3000 RPM would require 30V to operate. In this calculation the IR term (voltage drop across motor winding resistance) is disregarded. Maximum current is maximum torque divided by K_t . For example, a motor with $K_t = 0.5 Nm/A$ and maximum torque of 5 Nm would require 10 amps of current. Continuous current is RMS torque divided by K_t .

Motor Inductance The motor inductance is vital to the operation of analog servo drives, as it ensures that the DC motor current is properly filtered.



Caution

A motor that does not meet the rated minimum inductance value of the drive may damage the drive! If the motor inductance value is less than the minimum required for the selected drive, use of an external filter card is necessary. See "[Inductive Filter Cards](#)" on page 30 for more information.

A minimum motor inductance rating for each specific drive can be found in the datasheet. If the drive is operated below the maximum rated voltage, the minimum load inductance requirement may be reduced.

In the above equations the motor inductance is neglected. In brushless systems the voltage drop caused by the motor inductance can be significant. This is the case in high-speed applications if motors with high inductance and high pole count are used. Please use the following equation to determine motor terminal voltage (must be interpreted as a vector).

$$V_m = (R_m + j\omega L)I_m + E$$

Where:

- | | |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| L | -phase-to-phase motor inductance |
| ω | -maximum motor current frequency |

2.7.2 Power Supply Selection and Sizing

There are several factors to consider when selecting a power supply for an analog servo drive.

- Power Requirements
- Isolation
- Regeneration
- Voltage Ripple

Power Requirements refers to how much voltage and current will be required by the drive in the system. Isolation refers to whether the power supply needs an isolation transformer.

Regeneration is the energy the power supply needs to absorb during deceleration. Voltage Ripple is the voltage fluctuation inherent in unregulated supplies.

Power Supply Current and Voltage The power supply current rating is based on the maximum current that will be required by the system. If the power supply powers more than one drive, then the current requirements for each drive should be added together. Due to the nature of servo drives, the current into the drive does not always equal the current out of the drive. However, the power in is equal to the power out. Use the following equation to calculate the power supply output current, I_{PS} , based on the motor voltage and current requirements.

$$I_{PS} = \frac{V_M \cdot I_M}{V_{PS} \cdot (0.98)}$$

Where:

V_{PS}	-nominal power supply voltage
I_M	-motor current
V_M	-motor voltage

Use values of V_m and I_m at the point of maximum power in the move profile, [Figure 2.7](#) (when $V_M I_M = \max$). This will usually be at the end of a hard acceleration when both the torque and speed of the motor is high.

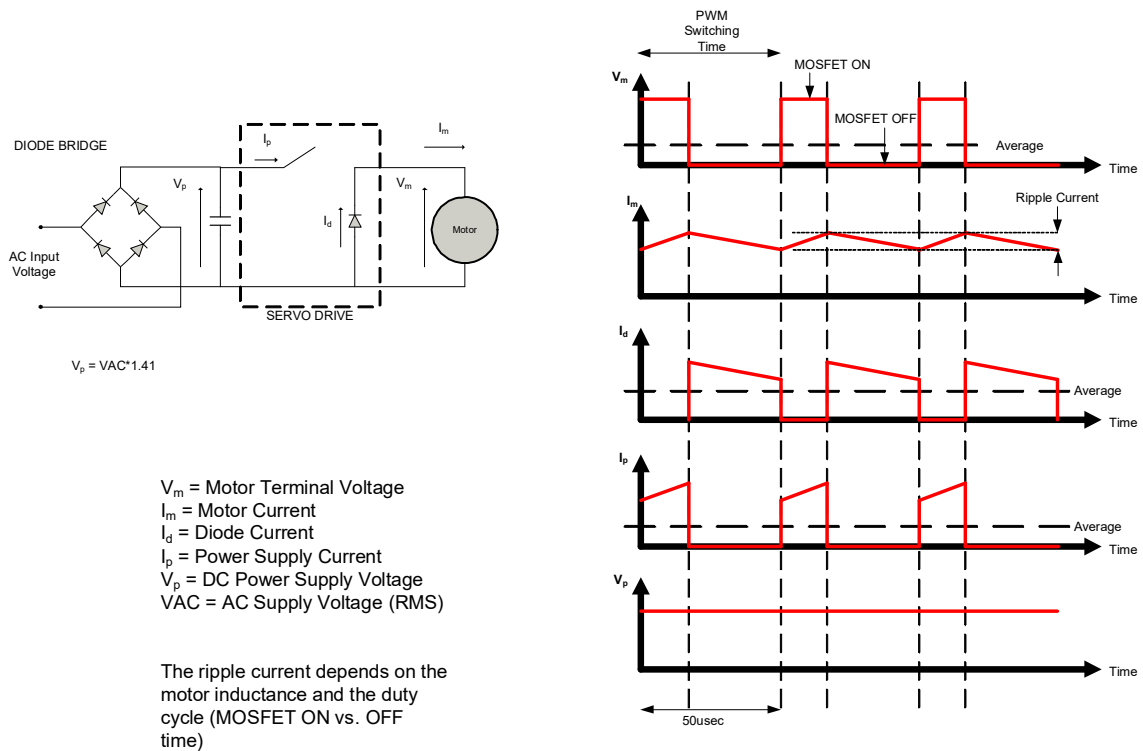
The power supply current is a pulsed DC current ([Figure 2.8](#)): when the MOSFET switch is on, it equals the motor current; when the MOSFET is off it is zero. Therefore, the power supply current is a function of the PWM duty cycle and the motor current (e.g. 30% duty cycle and 12 amps motor current will result in 4 amps power supply current). 30% duty cycle also means that the average motor voltage is 30% of the DC bus voltage. Power supply power is approximately equal to drive output power plus 3 to 5%.



Caution

The only time the power supply current needs to be as high as the drive output current is if the move profile requires maximum current at maximum velocity. In many cases however, maximum current is only required at start up and lower currents are required at higher speeds.

FIGURE 2.8 Unregulated DC Power Supply Current



A system will need a certain amount of voltage and current to operate properly. If the power supply has too little voltage/current the system will not perform adequately. If the power supply has too much voltage the drive may shut down due to over voltage, or the drive may be damaged.

To avoid nuisance over- or under-voltage errors caused by fluctuations in the power supply, the ideal system power supply voltage should be at least 10% above the entire system voltage requirement, and at least 10% below the lowest value of the following:

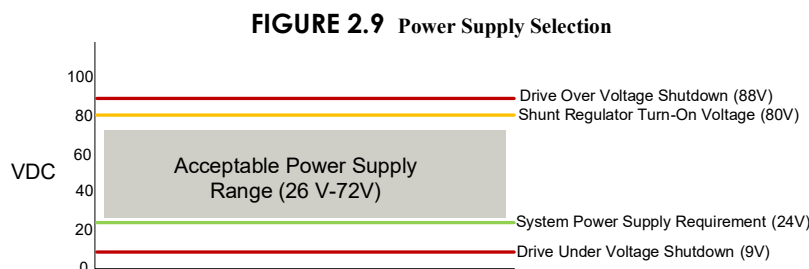
- Drive over voltage
- External shunt regulator turn-on voltage (see [“Regeneration and Shunt Regulators”](#) on page 22)

These percentages also account for the variances in K_t and K_e , and losses in the system external to the drive. The selected margin depends on the system parameter variations.



Do not select a supply voltage that could cause a mechanical over-speed in the event of a drive malfunction or a runaway condition. Brushed Motors may have voltage limitations due to the mechanical commutators. Consult the manufacturer's data sheets.

Figure 2.9 provides one possible example of an appropriate system power supply voltage for an analog drive using an external shunt regulator. The over voltage and under voltage shutdown levels on *ADVANCED* Motion Controls drives can be found on the drive datasheet. The shunt regulator turn-on voltage was chosen at an appropriate level to clamp the power supply voltage so it will not exceed the drive over voltage limit during regeneration. The system power supply requirement is based on the motor properties and how much voltage is needed to achieve the application move profile (see “Motor Current and Voltage” on page 15). Keep in mind that the calculated value for V_m is the minimum voltage required to complete moves at the desired speed and torque. There should be at least 10% headroom between the calculated value and the actual power supply voltage to allow for machine changes such as increased friction due to wear, change in load, increased operating speed, etc.



Isolation In systems where an AC line is involved, isolation is required between the AC line and the signal pins on the drive. This applies to all systems except those that use a battery as a power supply. There are two options for isolation:

1. The drive can have built in electrical isolation.
2. The power supply can provide isolation (e.g. a battery or an isolation transformer).

The system must have at least one of these options to operate safely.

Drive with Isolation

Some *ADVANCED* Motion Controls AxCent drives come with standard electrical isolation, while others can be ordered with isolation as an option. To determine if a drive has isolation refer to the functional block diagram on the drive datasheet. The isolation will be indicated by a dashed line through the functional block diagram separating power ground from signal ground.

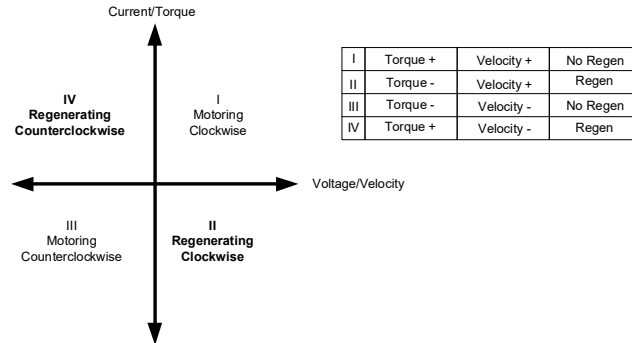
Drives with an "I" after the current rating in the part number (i.e. AB50A200I), drives that are rated to 400 VDC and drives that take AC line voltage for power come standard with isolation. Other drives that do not fall into these categories can be ordered by special request to include isolation.

Power Supply with Isolation

An isolated power supply is either a battery or a power supply that uses an isolation transformer to isolate the AC line voltage from the power supply ground. This allows both the power ground on an isolated power supply and the signal ground on a non-isolated drive to be safely pulled to earth ground. Always use an isolated power supply if there is no isolation in the drive.

Regeneration and Shunt Regulators Use of a shunt regulator is necessary in systems where motor deceleration or a downward motion of the motor load will cause the system's mechanical energy to be regenerated via the drive back onto the power supply.

FIGURE 2.10 Four Quadrant Operation - Regeneration occurs when Torque and Velocity polarity are opposite



This regenerated energy can charge the power supply capacitors to levels above that of the drive over-voltage shutdown level. If the power supply capacitance is unable to handle this excess energy, or if it is impractical to supply enough capacitance, then an external shunt regulator must be used to dissipate the regenerated energy. Shunt regulators are essentially a resistor placed in parallel with the DC bus. The shunt regulator will "turn-on" at a certain voltage level (set below the drive over-voltage shutdown level) and discharge the regenerated electric energy in the form of heat.

The voltage rise on the power supply capacitors without a shunt regulator, can be calculated according to a simple energy balance equation. The amount of energy transferred to the power supply can be determined through:

$$E_i = E_f$$

Where:

E_i -initial energy
 E_f -final energy

These energy terms can be broken down into the approximate mechanical and electrical terms - capacitive, kinetic, and potential energy. The energy equations for these individual components are as follows:

$$E_c = \frac{1}{2}CV_{nom}^2$$

Where:

E_c -energy stored in a capacitor (joules)
 C -capacitance
 V_{nom} -nominal bus voltage of the system

$$E_r = \frac{1}{2}J\omega^2$$

Where:

E_r	-kinetic (mechanical) energy of the load (joules)
J	-inertia of the load ($\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$)
ω	-angular velocity of the load (rads/s)

$$E_p = mgh$$

Where:

E_p	-potential mechanical energy (joules)
m	-mass of the load (kg)
g	-gravitational acceleration (9.81 m/s^2)
h	-vertical height of the load (meters)

During regeneration the kinetic and potential energy will be stored in the power supply's capacitor. To determine the final power supply voltage following a regenerative event, the following equation may be used for most requirements:

$$(E_c \cdot E_r \cdot E_p)_i = (E_c \cdot E_r \cdot E_p)_f$$

$$\frac{1}{2}CV_{nom}^2 + \frac{1}{2}J\omega_i^2 + mgh_i = \frac{1}{2}CV_f^2 + \frac{1}{2}J\omega_f^2 + mgh_f$$

Which simplifies to:

$$V_f = \sqrt{V_{nom}^2 + \frac{J}{C}(\omega_i^2 - \omega_f^2) + \frac{2mg(h_i - h_f)}{C}}$$

The V_f calculated must be below the power supply capacitance voltage rating and the drive over voltage limit. If this is not the case, a shunt regulator is necessary. A shunt regulator is sized in the same way as a motor or drive, i.e. continuous and RMS power dissipation must be determined. The power dissipation requirements can be determined from the application move profile (see [Figure 2.7](#)).

ADVANCED Motion Controls offers a variety of shunt regulators for servo drives. When choosing a shunt regulator, select one with a shunt voltage that is greater than the DC bus voltage of the application but less than the over voltage shutdown of the drive. Verify the need

for a shunt regulator by operating the servo drive under the worst-case braking and deceleration conditions. If the drive shuts off due to over-voltage, a shunt regulator is necessary.

Continuous Regeneration

In the special case where an application requires continuous regeneration (more than a few seconds) then a shunt regulator may not be sufficient to dissipate the regenerative energy. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for possible solutions to solve this kind of application. Some examples:

- Web tensioning device
- Electric vehicle rolling down a long hill
- Spinning mass with a very large inertia (grinding wheel, flywheel, centrifuge)
- Heavy lift gantry

Voltage Ripple For the most part, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls analog servo drives are unaffected by voltage ripple from the power supply. The current loop is fast enough to compensate for 60 Hz fluctuations in the bus voltage, and the components in the drive are robust enough to withstand all but the most extreme cases. Peak to peak voltage ripple as high as 25 V is acceptable.

There are some applications where the voltage ripple can cause unacceptable performance. This can become apparent where constant torque or force is critical or when the bus voltage is pulled low during high speed and high current applications. If necessary, the voltage ripple from the power supply can be reduced, either by switching from single phase AC to three phase AC, or by increasing the capacitance of the power supply.

The voltage ripple for a system can be estimated using the equation:

$$V_R = \frac{I_{PS}}{C_{PS}} F_f$$

Where:

V_R	-voltage ripple
C_{PS}	-power supply capacitance
I_{PS}	-power supply output current
F_f	-frequency factor (1/hertz)

The power supply capacitance can be estimated by rearranging the above equation to solve for the capacitance as:

$$C_{PS} = \frac{I_{PS}}{V_R} F_f$$

The frequency factor can be determined from:

$$F_f = \frac{0.42}{f}$$

where f is the AC line frequency in hertz. Note that for half wave rectified power supplies, $f = f/2$.

The power supply output current, if unknown, can be estimated by using information from the output side of the servo drive as given below:

$$I_{PS} = \frac{V_M \cdot I_M}{V_{PS} \cdot (0.98)}$$

Where:

- I_M -current through the motor
- V_{PS} -nominal power supply voltage
- V_M -motor voltage (see “[Motor Current and Voltage](#)” on page 15)

2.7.3 Environmental Specifications

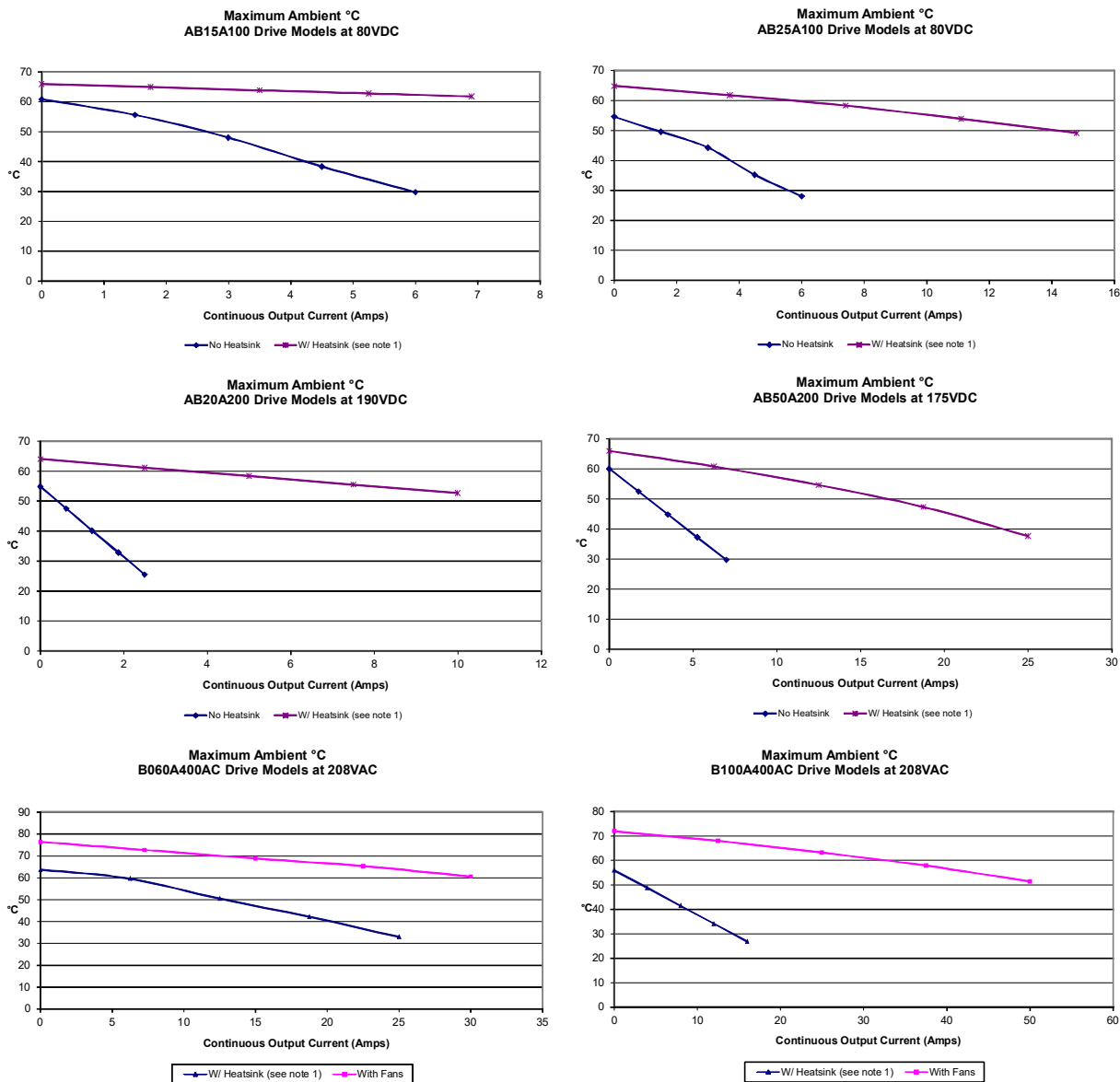
To ensure proper operation of an AxCent servo drive, it is important to evaluate the operating environment prior to installing the drive.

TABLE 2.5 Environmental Specifications

Environmental Specifications	
Parameter	Description
Ambient Temperature Range	See Figure 2.11
Baseplate Temperature Range	See Drive Datasheet
Humidity	90%, non-condensing
Mechanical Shock	10g, 11ms, Half-sine
Vibration	2 - 2000 Hz @ 2.5g
Altitude	0-3000m

Ambient Temperature Range and Thermal Data AxCent drives contain a built-in over-temperature disabling feature if the baseplate temperature rises above a certain value. For a specific continuous output current, the graphs below specify an upper limit to the ambient temperature range AxCent drives can operate within while keeping the baseplate temperature below the over-temperature value. It is recommended to mount the baseplate of the AxCent drive to a heatsink for best thermal management results. For mounting instructions and diagrams see “[Mounting](#)” on page 34.

FIGURE 2.11 AxCent Drives Maximum Ambient Temperature



1. The heatsink used in the above tests is a 15" x 22" x 0.65" aluminum plate.
2. Contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for the thermal data of drive models not included in Figure 2.11.

Shock/Vibrations While AxCent drives are designed to withstand a high degree of mechanical shock and vibration, too much physical abuse can cause erratic behavior, or cause the drive to cease operation entirely. Be sure the drive is securely mounted in the system to reduce the shock and vibration the drive will be exposed to. The best way to secure the drive against mechanical vibration is to use screws to mount the drive against its baseplate. For information

on mounting options and procedures, see [“Mounting” on page 38](#) and the dimensional drawings and information on the drive datasheet.



Caution

Care should be taken to ensure the drive is securely mounted in a location where no moving parts will come in contact with the drive.

3

Integration in the Servo System

This chapter will give various details on incorporating an AxCent servo drive into a system, such as how to properly ground the drive along with the entire system, and how to properly connect motor wires, power supply wires, feedback wires, and inputs into the analog servo drive.

3.1 LVD Requirements

The servo drives covered in the LVD Reference report were investigated as components intended to be installed in complete systems that meet the requirements of the Machinery Directive. In order for these units to be acceptable in the end users' equipment, the following conditions of acceptability must be met.

1. European approved overload and current protection must be provided for the motors as specified in section 7.2 and 7.3 of EN60204.1.
2. A disconnect switch shall be installed in the final system as specified in section 5.3 of EN60204.1.
3. All drives that do not have a grounding terminal must be installed in, and conductively connected to a grounded end use enclosure in order to comply with the accessibility requirements of section 6, and to establish grounding continuity for the system in accordance with section 8 of EN60204.1.
4. A disconnecting device that will prevent the unexpected start-up of a machine shall be provided if the machine could cause injury to persons. This device shall prevent the automatic restarting of the machine after any failure condition shuts the machine down.
5. European approved over current protective devices must be installed in line before the servo drive, these devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the installation instructions (the installation instructions shall specify an over current rating value as low as possible, but taking into consideration inrush currents, etc.). Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over protection in the end users' equipment.

These items should be included in your declaration of incorporation as well as the name and address of your company, description of the equipment, a statement that the servo drives must not be put into service until the machinery into which they are incorporated has been declared in conformity with the provisions of the Machinery Directive, and identification of the person signing.

3.2 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements

The following sections contain installation instructions necessary for meeting EMC requirements.

Contact the factory for assistance in determining the type of drive in use.

General

1. Shielded cables must be used for all interconnect cables to the drive and the shield of the cable must be grounded at the closest ground point with the least amount of resistance.
2. The drive's metal enclosure must be grounded to the closest ground point with the least amount of resistance.
3. The drive must be mounted in such a manner that the connectors and exposed printed circuit board are not accessible to be touched by personnel when the product is in operation. If this is unavoidable there must be clear instructions that the drive is not to be touched during operation. This is to avoid possible malfunction due to electrostatic discharge from personnel.

Analog Input Drives

4. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted to the low level signal interconnect cables to prevent pickup from external RF fields.

PWM Input Drives

5. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted to the PWM input cable to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

MOSFET Switching Drives

6. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted at the load cable connector to reduce electromagnetic emissions.
7. An appropriately rated Cosel TAC series AC power filter in combination with a Fair Rite model 5977002701 torroid (placed on the supply end of the filter) must be fitted to the AC supply to any MOSFET drive system in order to reduce conducted emissions fed back into the supply network.

IGBT Switching Drives

8. An appropriately rated Cosel TAC series AC power filter in combination with a Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core (placed on the supply end of the filter) must be fitted to the AC supply to any IGBT drive system in order to reduce conducted emissions fed back into the supply network.
9. A Fair Rite model 0443164151 round suppression core and model 5977003801 torroid must be fitted at the load cable connector to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

Fitting of AC Power Filters

It is possible for noise generated by the machine to "leak" onto the main AC power, and then get distributed to nearby equipment. If this equipment is sensitive, it may be adversely

affected by the noise. AC power filters can filter this noise and keep it from getting on the AC power signal. The above mentioned AC power filters should be mounted flat against the enclosure of the product using the two mounting lugs provided on the filter. Paint should be removed from the enclosure where the filter is fitted to ensure good metal to metal contact. The filter should be mounted as close to the point where the AC power filter enters the enclosure as possible. Also, the AC power cable on the load end of the filter should be routed as far from the AC power cable on the supply end of the filter and all other cables and circuitry to minimize RF coupling.

3.2.1 Ferrite Suppression Core Set-up

If PWM switching noise couples onto the feedback signals or onto the signal ground, then a ferrite suppression core can be used to attenuate the noise. Take the motor leads and wrap them around the suppression core as many times as reasonable possible, usually 2-5 times. Make sure to strip back the cable shield and only wrap the motor wires. There will be two wires for single phased (brushed) motors and 3 wires for three phase (brushless) motors. Wrap the motor wires together as a group around the suppression core and leave the motor case ground wire out of the loop. The suppression core should be located as near to the drive as possible. TDK ZCAT series snap-on filters are recommended for reducing radiated emissions on all I/O cables.

3.2.2 Inductive Filter Cards

Inductive filter cards are added in series with the motor and are used to increase the load inductance in order to meet the minimum load inductance requirement of the drive. They also serve to counteract the effects of line capacitance found in long cable runs and in high voltage systems. These filter cards also have the added benefit of reducing the amount of PWM noise that couples onto the signal lines.

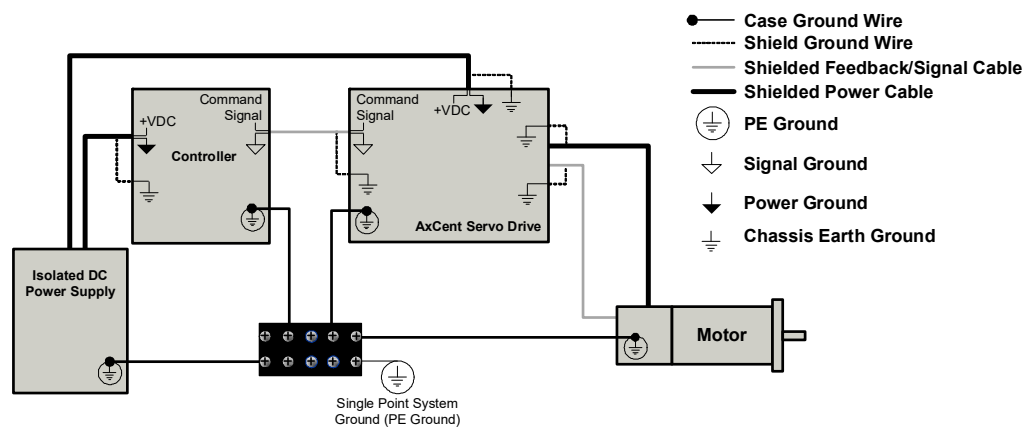
Visit www.a-m-c.com/products/filter_cards.html for information on purchasing *ADVANCED* Motion Controls inductive filter cards.

3.3 Grounding

In most servo systems all the case grounds should be connected to a single Protective Earth (PE) ground point in a "star" configuration. Grounding the case grounds at a central PE ground point reduces the chance for ground loops and helps to minimize high frequency voltage differentials between components. All ground wires must be of a heavy gauge and be as short as possible. The following should be securely grounded at the central PE grounding point:

- Motor chassis
- Controller chassis
- Power supply chassis
- AxCent Servo Drive chassis

FIGURE 3.1 System Grounding



Ground cable shield wires at the drive side to a chassis earth ground point.

The DC power ground and the input reference command signal ground are oftentimes at a different potential than chassis/PE ground. The signal ground of the controller must be connected to the signal ground of the drive to avoid picking up noise due to the "floating" differential servo drive input. In systems using an isolated DC power supply, signal ground and/or power ground can be referenced to chassis ground. First decide if this is both appropriate and safe. If this is the case, they can be grounded at the central grounding point. For systems using AC power referenced to chassis ground, the drive must have internal optical isolation to avoid a short through the the drive's diode bridge.



Warning

Grounding is important for safety. The grounding recommendations in this manual may not be appropriate for all applications and system machinery. It is the responsibility of the system designer to follow applicable regulations and guidelines as they apply to the specific servo system.

3.4 Wiring

Servo system wiring typically involves wiring a controller (digital or analog), a servo drive, a power supply, and a motor. Wiring these servo system components is fairly easy when a few simple rules are observed. As with any high efficiency PWM servo drive, the possibility of noise and interference coupling through the cabling and wires can be harmful to overall system performance. Noise in the form of interfering signals can be coupled:

- Capacitively (electrostatic coupling) onto signal wires in the circuit (the effect is more serious for high impedance points).
- Magnetically to closed loops in the signal circuit (independent of impedance levels).
- Electromagnetically to signal wires acting as small antennas for electromagnetic radiation.
- From one part of the circuit to other parts through voltage drops on ground lines.

The main source of noise is the high DV/DT (typically about 1V/nanosecond) of the drive's output power stage. This PWM output can couple back to the signal lines through the output and input wires. The best methods to reduce this effect are to move signal and motor leads apart, use an inductive filter card, add shielding, and use differential inputs at the drive.

Unfortunately, low-frequency magnetic fields are not significantly reduced by metal enclosures. Typical sources are 50 or 60 Hz power transformers and low frequency current changes in the motor leads. Avoid large loop areas in signal, power-supply, and motor wires. Twisted pairs of wires are quite effective in reducing magnetic pick-up because the enclosed area is small, and the signals induced in successive twist cancel.

ADVANCED Motion Controls recommends using the following hand crimp tools for the appropriate I/O and Feedback cable and wire preparation. Consult the drive datasheet to see which connectors are used on a specific drive.

Drive Connector	Hand Crimp Tool Manufacturer and Part Number
16-pin, 2.54 mm spaced friction lock header	Molex: P/N 0638118200
Standard Density D-sub headers	Tyco: P/N 58448-2
High Density D-sub headers	Tyco: P/N 90800-1

3.4.1 Wire Gauge

As the wire diameter decreases, the impedance increases. Higher impedance wire will broadcast more noise than lower impedance wire. Therefore, when selecting the wire gauge for the motor power wires, power supply wires, and ground wires, it is better to err on the side of being too thick rather than too thin. This becomes more critical as the cable length increases. The following table provides recommendations for selecting the appropriate wire size for a specific current. These values should be used as reference only. Consult any applicable national or local electrical codes for specific guidelines.

TABLE 3.1 Current and Wire Gauges

Current (A)	Minimum Wire Size (AWG)	mm ²
10	#20	0.518
15	#18	0.823
20	#16	1.31
35	#14	2.08
45	#12	3.31

Current (A)	Minimum Wire Size (AWG)	mm ²
60	#10	5.26
80	#8	8.37
120	#6	13.3
150	#0	53.5
200	#00	67.4

3.4.2 Motor Wires

The motor power wires supply power from the drive to the motor. Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the motor power cables is recommended to reduce the amount of noise coupling to sensitive components.

- For a brushed motor or voice coil, twist the two motor wires together as a group.
- For a brushless motor, twist all three motor wires together as a group.

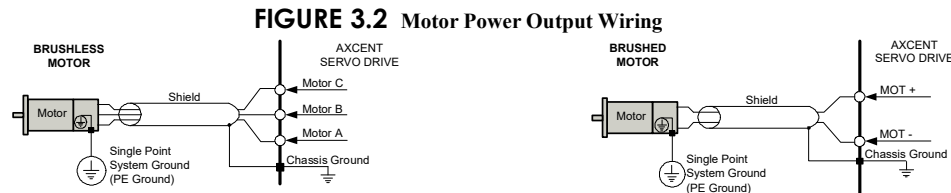
Ground the motor power cable shield at one end only to the servo drive chassis ground. The motor power leads should be bundled and shielded in their own cable and kept separate from feedback signal wires.



DO NOT use wire shield to carry motor current or power!

Caution

The diagrams below show how an AxCent servo drive connects to a Brushless (three-phase) and Brushed (single-phase) motor. Notice that the motor wires are shielded, and that the motor housing is grounded to the single point system ground (PE Ground). The cable shield should be grounded at the drive side to chassis ground.



If using relays or other means to disconnect the motor leads, be sure the drive is disabled before reconnecting the motor leads to the drive. Connecting the motor leads to the drive while it is enabled can generate extremely high voltage spikes which will damage the drive.

Caution

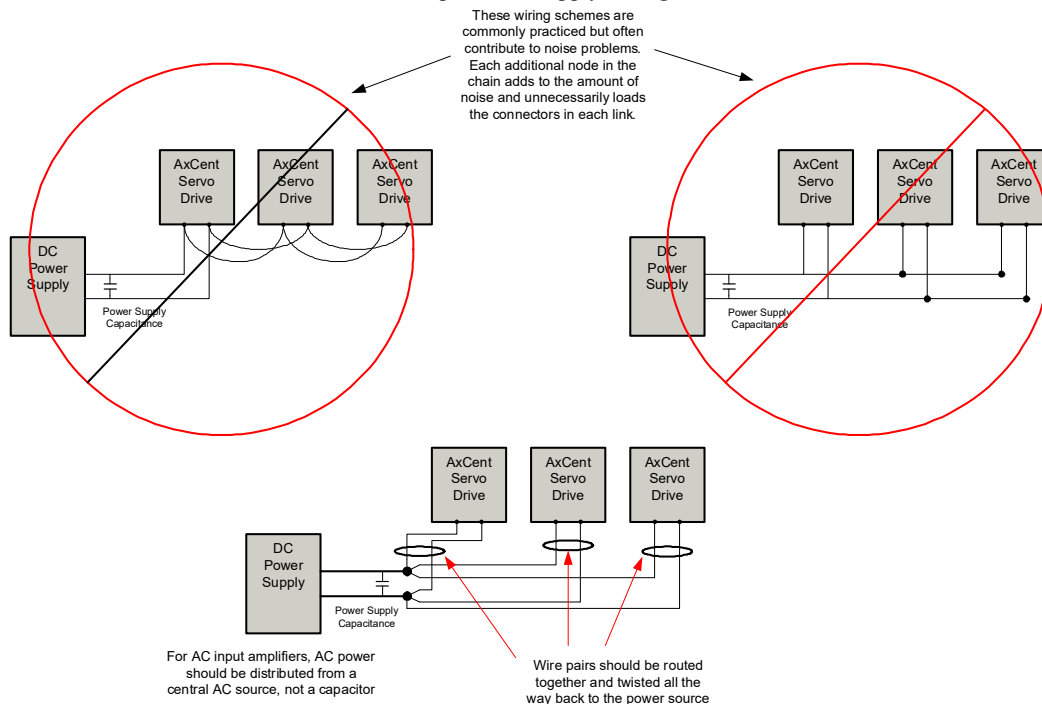
3.4.3 Power Supply Wires

The PWM current spikes generated by the power output-stage are supplied by the internal power supply capacitors. In order to keep the current ripple on these capacitors to an acceptable level it is necessary to use heavy power supply leads and keep them as short as possible. Reduce the inductance of the power leads by twisting them. Ground the power supply cable shield at one end only to the servo drive chassis ground.

When multiple drives are installed in a single application, precaution regarding ground loops must be taken. Whenever there are two or more possible current paths to a ground connection, damage can occur or noise can be introduced in the system. The following rules apply to all multiple axis installations, regardless of the number of power supplies used (see [Figure 3.3](#)):

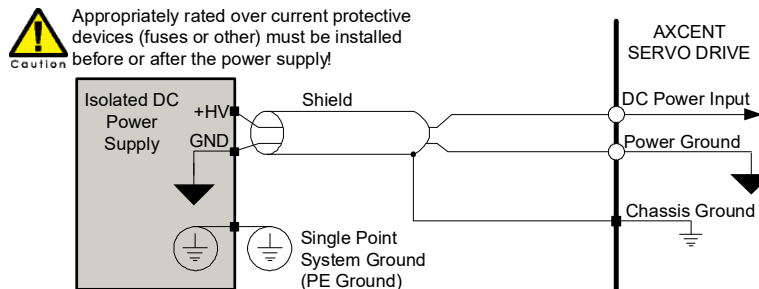
1. Run separate power supply leads to each drive directly from the power supply filter capacitor.
2. Never "daisy-chain" any power or DC common connections. Use a "star"-connection instead.

FIGURE 3.3 Multiple Power Supply Wiring



DC Power Supplies For drives using a DC power supply, connect the isolated DC supply high voltage to the DC Power Input terminal, and the DC supply ground to the power ground terminal.

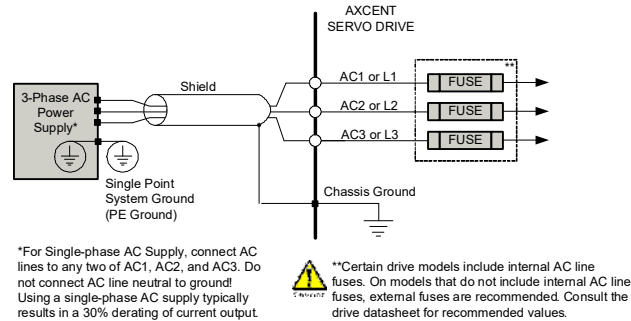
FIGURE 3.4 DC Power Supply Wiring



An external electrolytic capacitor connected between high voltage and power ground as close to the drive as possible is recommended on some drive models. Consult the datasheet for the drive in use to determine the recommended capacitance value, if necessary.

Three Phase AC Power Supplies Drives that accept three-phase AC line power have either a 5-contact AC input screw terminal or a 4-port AC input connector. Connect a three phase AC supply to AC1, AC2, and AC3, or L1, L2, and L3, depending on the drive model. On certain models, a single phase AC supply can be connected to any two of the three AC terminals. Typically using a single phase AC supply in these cases will result in a 30% derating of current output. Consult the drive datasheet to determine if a specific drive model also accepts single phase AC with current derating.

FIGURE 3.5 Single or Three Phase AC Line Connections

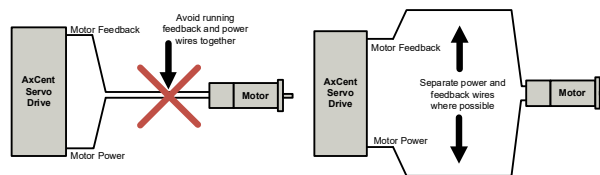


Single Phase AC Power Supplies Drive models that accept only single-phase AC line power (i.e. AB30A200AC) include a standard 3-prong pluggable AC connector for attachment to an AC supply on the underside of the drive.

3.4.4 Feedback Wires

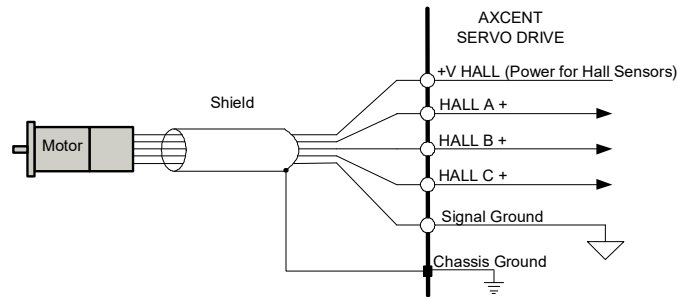
Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the feedback wires is recommended. Ground the shield at one end only to the servo drive chassis ground. Route cables and/or wires to minimize their length and exposure to noise sources. The motor power wires are a major source of noise, and the motor feedback wires are susceptible to receiving noise. This is why it is never a good idea to route the motor power wires with the motor feedback wires, even if they are shielded. Although both of these cables originate at the drive and terminate at the motor, try to find separate paths that maintain distance between the two. A rule of thumb for the minimum distance between these wires is 10cm for every 10m of cable length.

FIGURE 3.6 Feedback Wiring



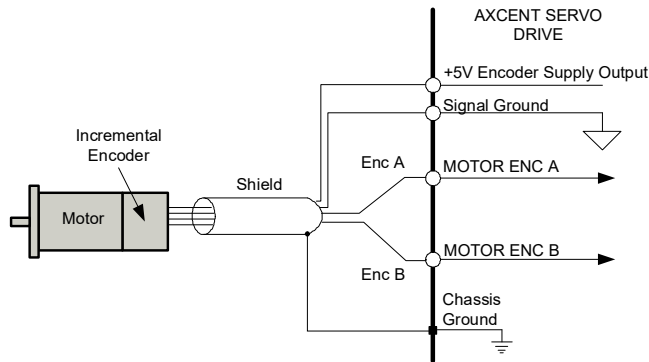
Hall Sensors AxCent drives accept single-ended Hall Sensor feedback for commutation. Most drives also include a +6V, 30 mA voltage supply output that can be used to power the Hall Sensors. Verify on the motor datasheet that the voltage and current rating of the supply output will work with the Hall Sensors before connecting.

FIGURE 3.7 Hall Sensor Input Connections



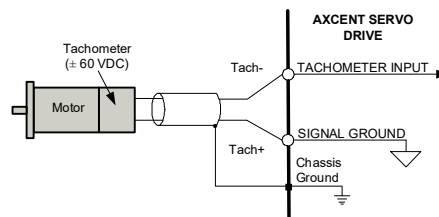
Incremental Encoder AxCent drives support either single-ended incremental encoder feedback for velocity control. The drive must be in Encoder Velocity mode for proper operation with the encoder. See the drive datasheet for specific DIP switch settings. Both the "A" and "B" channels of the encoder are required for operation. If using the +5V, 150mA (or 250mA) low voltage power supply output from the drive, verify that the supply output voltage and current rating is sufficient for the encoder specifications.

FIGURE 3.8 Incremental Encoder Connections



Tachometer For drives that accept a Tachometer for velocity control, connect the negative tachometer input to the tachometer input on the drive, and connect the positive tachometer input to signal ground. The drive must be in Tachometer Velocity mode in order to properly use the tachometer input. See the drive datasheet for specific DIP switch settings. The tachometer has a range of ± 60 VDC. Certain drive models allow scaling of the allowable tachometer voltage range. Consult the drive datasheet for tachometer scaling instructions.

FIGURE 3.9 Tachometer Input Connections



3.4.5 Input Reference Wires

Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the input reference wires is recommended. Connect the reference source "+" to "+REF IN", and the reference source "-" (or common) to "-REF IN". Connect the shield to the servo drive chassis ground. The servo drive's reference input circuit will attenuate the common mode voltage between signal source and drive power grounds.

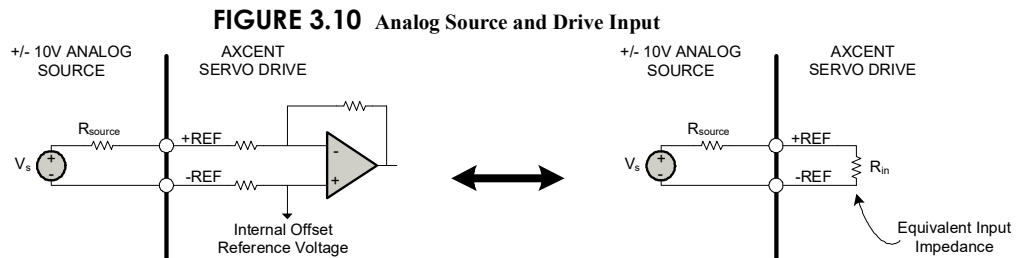


Notice

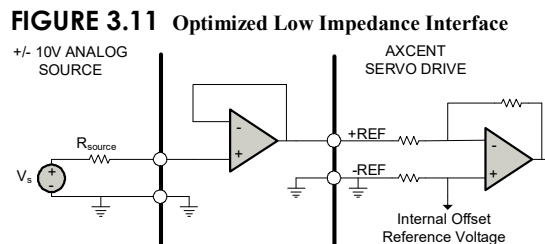
In case of a single-ended reference signal, connect the command signal to "+ REF IN" and connect the command return and "- REF IN" to signal ground.

Long signal wires (10-15 feet and up) can also be a source of noise when driven from a typical op-amp output. Due to the inductance and capacitance of the wire the op-amp can oscillate. It is always recommended to set a fixed voltage at the controller and then check the signal at the drive with an oscilloscope to make sure that the signal is noise free.

±10V Analog Input When using a ±10V analog signal for an input command, it is important to consider the output impedance of the analog source when interfacing to input circuitry. A poorly designed ±10V analog input interface can lead to undesired command signal attenuation. [Figure 3.10](#) shows an external analog source connected to an analog input. The ideal voltage delivered to the input is V_s . However, the voltage drop across R_{source} will reduce the signal being delivered to the drive input. This voltage drop is dependent on the value of R_{source} and the drive's input impedance.

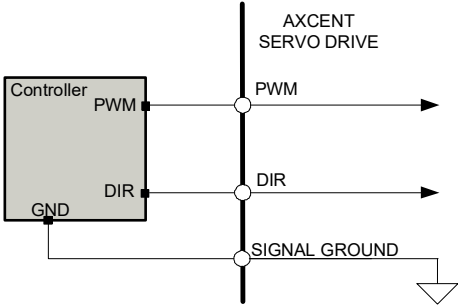


The drive's analog input can be simplified to a single impedance, R_{in} , as shown in [Figure 3.10](#). If the impedance of R_{source} is of the same magnitude or larger than R_{in} , there will be a significant voltage drop across R_{source} . Reduced values of R_{source} cause a lower voltage drop that increases signal integrity. In order to avoid a voltage drop of more than 5% between the source and the drive, it is recommended to use an R_{source} value of less than or equal to 2kohm. If there is a large output impedance from the analog source, it is recommended to use a buffer circuit between the analog source output and the drive input. A unity gain op-amp circuit as shown in [Figure 3.11](#) will ensure low output impedance with minimal voltage drop.



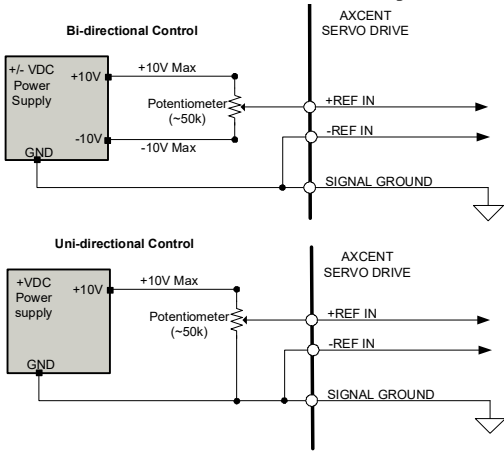
PWM and Direction Inputs The PWM and Direction inputs should be connected to the PWM and DIR input pins on the drive.

FIGURE 3.12 PWM and Direction Input Wiring



Potentiometer Input AxCent servo drives that accept $\pm 10V$ analog input can be commanded with the use of an external potentiometer and a DC supply by varying the DC supply voltage across the potentiometer.

FIGURE 3.13 Potentiometer Input



3.5 Mounting

ADVANCED Motion Controls' AxCent servo drives provide mounting hole locations on the baseplate allowing the drive to be mounted either vertically or horizontally. Drives can be mounted to a heatsink or other plane surface, or attached to a lab rail either on a test bench or as part of a larger system. Consult the drive datasheet for specific mounting dimensions and mounting hole locations.

4 Operation

This chapter will describe the operation and setup of an *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' AxCent servo drive.

4.1 Initial Setup and Features

To begin operation with your AxCent servo drive, be sure to read and understand the previous chapters in this manual as well as the drive datasheet. Be sure that all system specifications and requirements have been met, and become familiar with the capabilities and functions of the drive. Also, be aware of the “[Troubleshooting](#)” section at the end of this manual for solutions to basic operation issues.

Do not install the servo drive into the system without first determining that all chassis power has been removed for at least 10 seconds. Never remove a drive from an installation with power applied. Carefully follow the grounding and wiring instructions in the previous chapters to make sure your system is safely and properly set up.

4.1.1 Pin Function Details

The family of AxCent drives provide a number of various input and output pins for parameter observation and drive configuration options. Not all drives will have each of the following pin functions. Consult the drive datasheet to see which input/output pin functions are available for each drive.

Current Monitor Output Measured relative to signal ground, power ground, or a separate current monitor ground, depending on the drive model. Consult the drive datasheet to determine the correct ground connection. The current monitor provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the actual drive current output. The scaling factor for each individual drive can be found on the drive datasheet. The drive must be connected to a load in order for the drive to output actual current. Note that the polarity of the current monitor measurement will be reversed from the current command.

Example Measurement

The current monitor pin on a drive with a current monitor scaling factor of 4 A/V is measured to be -1.3V. With the polarity reversed on the current monitor pin, this would mean the drive is outputting: $(4 \text{ A/V})(1.3\text{V}) = 5.2\text{A}$.

Current Reference Output Measured relative to signal ground, the current reference provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the command signal to the internal current loop. The drive does not need to be connected to a load to read the current reference output. The internal command current may differ from the actual drive output current due to certain conditions such as a small load, drive faults, undersized power supplies, inhibited drive, etc. The command to the internal current loop can be solved for by the following equation:

$$I_{\text{command}} = V_{\text{current ref}} \cdot \frac{I_{\text{peak}}}{V_{\text{max}}}$$

Where:

I_{command}	-command current to the internal current loop
$V_{\text{current ref}}$	-measured voltage at current reference pin
I_{peak}	-peak current value of the drive
V_{max}	-voltage corresponding to maximum internal current command, value found on drive datasheet; on most drive models $V_{\text{max}} = 7.45\text{V}$

Example Measurement

The current reference pin on a drive with a peak current value of 12A and V_{max} of 7.45V is measured to be 2.63V. Following the above equation to solve for I_{command} , the command current to the internal current loop would be **4.24A**.

Inhibit / Enable Input This pin provides a +5V TTL input that allows a user to enable/disable the drive by either connecting this pin to ground or by applying a +5VDC voltage level to this pin, referenced to signal ground. By default, the drive will be enabled if this pin is high, and disabled if this pin is low. This logic can be reversed, however, either through DIP switch setting or by removing a SMT jumper from the PCB (consult the drive datasheet to see which option is available; note that removal of the SMT jumper must be done by a person familiar with SMT soldering, and that the drive warranty will be voided if the drive is damaged). This will require all inhibit lines to be brought to ground to enable the drive. Some drives can also be ordered with inverted inhibit logic as well (-INV option). Some drive models allow the drive to be configured so the inhibit input does not trigger a drive fault state. Typically this is achieved by DIP switch setting. Consult the drive datasheet to see if this option is available.

Directional Inhibits

Some drives also include directional inhibit pins that disable motor motion in either the positive or negative direction, typically used for limit switches. These pins do not cause a drive fault condition. They will follow the same logic (either standard or inverted) as the main inhibit/enable input.

Fault Output This pin provides a +5V TTL output measured relative to signal ground that will indicate when the drive is subject to one of the following fault conditions: inhibit, invalid Hall State, output short circuit, over voltage, under voltage, over temperature, or power-up reset. On most drive models this pin will read +5V (High) when the drive is in a fault state, but some drives allow the logic to be reversed, so that a 0V (Low) fault output indicates a fault.

AxCent drives automatically self-reset once all active fault conditions have been removed. For instance if the DC power supply rises above the over-voltage shutdown level of the drive, the Fault Output will indicate a fault, and the drive will be disabled. Once the DC power supply level is returned to a value below the drive over-voltage shutdown level, the Fault Output will return to the normal state, and the drive will automatically become enabled.

Low Voltage Power Supply Outputs Most drives include low voltage power supply outputs meant for customer use. Consult the drive datasheet to see which low voltage outputs are included on a specific drive.

- **±10V (or ±5V), 3mA Output** - Typically used as an on-board ±10V analog input signal for testing purposes. This output can be used in conjunction with an external potentiometer to vary the input signal between ±10V.
- **+6V, 30mA Output** - Available on three phase (brushless) drive only. This pin provides a +6 VDC output that can be used to power Hall Sensors. Consult the motor datasheet to find out which feedback wire from the motor is the Hall Sensor power supply wire.



Notice

Do not use this +6V supply to power an encoder. An encoder will require a separate power supply. Consult the encoder datasheet or specifications to determine the encoder voltage and current requirements. Typical values are +5VDC at 150mA.

- **+5V, 150 mA (or 250mA) Output** - Can be used as power for an encoder. Consult the motor or encoder datasheet to determine the appropriate encoder voltage and current requirements before connecting this supply.

Velocity Monitor Output This pin provides an analog voltage output that is proportional to the actual motor speed. The scaling factor for each individual drive can be found on the drive datasheet.

- For a drive in Encoder Velocity Mode, substitute the voltage value read at the velocity monitor pin, V_{monitor} , into the below equation to determine the motor RPM:

$$\text{Motor Velocity [RPM]} = \frac{V_{\text{monitor}} \cdot \text{Scaling Factor} \cdot 60}{\text{Number of encoder lines}}$$

- For a drive in Hall Velocity Mode, substitute the voltage value read at the velocity monitor pin, V_{monitor} , into the below equation to determine the motor RPM:

$$\text{Motor Velocity [RPM]} = \frac{V_{\text{monitor}} \cdot \text{Scaling Factor} \cdot 120}{\text{Number of motor poles}}$$

4.1.2 Potentiometer Function Details

All potentiometers vary in resistance from 0 to 50 kohm, over 12 turns. An additional full turn that does not effect resistance is provided on either end, for a total of 14 turns. It is recommended to turn the potentiometer 14 counter-clockwise turns before adjusting the potentiometer to a specific setting. Consult the drive datasheet to see which potentiometers are included on a specific drive.

TABLE 4.1 Potentiometer Function Details

Potentiometer	Description
Loop Gain Adjustment	This potentiometer must be set completely counter-clockwise in Current Mode. In Velocity, Voltage, or Duty Cycle Mode, this potentiometer adjusts the gain in the velocity forward position of the closed loop. Turning this potentiometer clockwise increases the gain. Start from the full counter-clockwise position, turn the potentiometer clockwise until the motor shaft oscillates, then back off one turn.
Current Limit	This potentiometer adjusts the current limit of the drive. To adjust the current limit, first use any available DIP switches or external current limiting resistors to set the maximum current limits and ratios (consult drive datasheet to see which options are available). If further adjustment is necessary, use the following equation to determine the number of clockwise turns from the full counter-clockwise position necessary to set the desired current limit: $\# \text{ of turns (from full CCW)} = \left(\frac{I_{system}}{I_{max}} \right) 12 + 1$ <p>I_{system} = the desired current limit of the system (typically determined by motor current rating) I_{max} = maximum current capability of the drive; this value is determined after any external current limiting resistors have been used and/or any current scaling or current reduction DIP switches have been set. If no DIP switches or external resistors have been used, then I_{max} is the default maximum continuous current limit set by the drive hardware. See "Current Limiting Procedure" on page 44 for an example of how to use this potentiometer.</p>
Reference Gain	This potentiometer adjusts the ratio between the input signal and the output variable (voltage, current, velocity, or duty cycle). For a specific gain setting, turn this potentiometer fully counter-clockwise, and adjust the command input to 1V. Then turn clockwise while monitoring motor velocity or drive output voltage (depending on mode of operation) until the required output is obtained for the given 1V command. Turning this potentiometer counter-clockwise decreases the reference in gain, while setting this potentiometer in the fully clockwise position makes the whole range of drive output available. This potentiometer may be left in the fully clockwise position if a controller is used to close the velocity or position loops.
Test/Offset	This potentiometer acts as an internal command source for testing when the Test/Offset switch is in the ON position. If the Test/Offset switch is in the OFF position, then this potentiometer can be used to adjust a small amount of command offset in order to compensate for offsets that may be present in the servo system. Turning this potentiometer clockwise adjusts the offset in a negative direction relative to the +Ref input command. Before offset adjustments are made, the reference inputs must be grounded or commanded to 0 volts.
Ramp Time	This potentiometer sets the ramp time for the command input signal. The ramp time can be set for up to 30 seconds in reaching the max command by adjusting the potentiometer fully clockwise. Ramping rates are linear with respect to time and apply to both directions of motion.

Test Points for Potentiometers After the potentiometer adjustments have been completed, the resistance values can be measured for future adjustments or duplication on other servo drives of the same part number. Test points for potentiometer wipers are provided and are located at the foot of all four potentiometers. Resistance measurements are only to be used to duplicate drive settings, since some potentiometers have other resistors in series or parallel. Measure the resistance between the test point and the outer leg of the potentiometer or between the test point and an appropriate ground. See the block diagram on the drive datasheet to determine which ground should be used for each potentiometer.



Notice

Before taking potentiometer resistance measurements, make sure that all potentiometers and DIP switches have been set to the desired settings, and that all I/O and Feedback cables have been removed from the drive, as these can affect resistance measurements.

Potentiometer Tool *ADVANCED* Motion Controls offers a tool for adjusting the potentiometers, part number **PT01**. This tool features an exposed stainless steel blade on one end and a recessed stainless steel blade on the other end. Contact customer service for ordering information.

4.1.3 Switch Function Details

Together with the described functions below certain switches may also be used in selecting the mode of operation, while some may be used strictly for mode selection. Switch implementation and functionality within the drive circuitry is included on the block diagram of the drive datasheet. Consult the drive datasheet to see which switches are included on a specific drive.

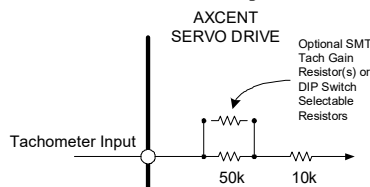
TABLE 4.2 Switch Function Details

Switch	Description
Current Scaling	Changes the sensitivity of the current sense, thereby reducing the peak and continuous current limits by a given amount.
Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment	Adjusts the proportional gain of the current loop.
Current Limit Ratio	Sets the continuous-to-peak current limit ratio to a given percentage. The default setting for all drives is a continuous-to-peak current limit ratio of 50% (i.e., 12 amp peak limit, 6 amp continuous limit).
Current Loop Integral Gain	Activates or deactivates the current loop integral gain. This switch is OFF by default.
Outer Loop Integration Activation	Activates or deactivates the outer loop integration. For Current Mode, outer loop integration should be deactivated, but should be activated for other modes.
Outer Loop Integral Gain Adjustment	Increases or decreases the integral gain of the outer loop.
Duty Cycle Feedback	Enables/disables the duty cycle feedback. Duty cycle feedback is only enabled when the drive is configured for Duty Cycle Mode.
Hall Sensor Commutation Phasing	Tells the drive the type of Hall sensor phasing the motor has. Switches between 120 and 60 degree phasing.
Test/Offset	Switches the drive between Test mode and Offset mode. In Test mode, the command signal is adjustable via the Test/Offset potentiometer. In Offset mode, the drive will accept commands via the reference inputs, but a small amount of offset can be adjusted in order to compensate for offsets that may be present in the servo system.
Velocity Feedback Polarity	Changes the polarity of the internal feedback signal and the velocity monitor output signal. Inversion of the feedback polarity may be required to prevent a motor run-away condition. See "Motor Problems" on page 59 for more information.
IR Compensation	Activates or deactivates IR feedback. IR feedback should be activated for IR Compensation Mode, and deactivated for other modes.
Inhibit Logic	Sets the logic of the inhibit pins to Active High or Active Low.

4.1.4 Tachometer Input Gain Scaling

Standard drive tachometer inputs are typically pre-configured such that the standard 60k input resistance scales the maximum tach input voltage to 60V. The 60k tachometer input resistance is actually populated with a 50k resistor in series with a 10k resistor. Most drives with a tachometer feedback input will have an SMT resistor location in parallel with the 50k resistor or tachometer scaling DIP Switch options. Contact the factory for instructions and assistance for SMT resistor additions.

FIGURE 4.1 Tachometer Input Resistance



This allows users to reduce the effective input resistance to a value that more closely matches their maximum application feedback voltage in order to increase the tachometer input gain. An appropriate tachometer input resistance value should be at least 1000 times the maximum tachometer voltage feedback value. From zero to infinite resistance (open connection), this

through-hole or SMT location can scale the tachometer's maximum input voltage range from 10V to 60V.

To determine the maximum feedback voltage for the application:

1. Determine the absolute maximum speed required of the motor for the application (S_m , in kRPM).
2. Look up the tachometer's voltage to speed constant (K_v , in V/kRPM).
3. Calculate for the tachometer's maximum voltage output in the application:

$$V_{max} = K_v \cdot S_m$$

Example

An application's maximum motor speed is 4.7 kRPM, and the tachometer is rated for 7 V/kRPM. Using the above equation, the maximum voltage from the tachometer input, V_{max} , will be 33V. Therefore, the equivalent tachometer input resistance must be at least 33k. Choosing an equivalent resistance value of 35k, solve for the required resistance of the SMT resistor:

$$\text{Tach Gain Additional Resistor (in kohm)} = \frac{(50 \cdot V_{max}) - 500}{60 - V_{max}} = \frac{(50 \cdot 35) - 500}{60 - 35} = 50k$$

As solved for above, the equivalent 35k resistance can be achieved by adding a 50k SMT resistor in parallel with the existing 50k resistor on the drive tachometer input.



Notice

Scaling the tachometer input gain is not a required procedure for all applications. Most applications will work well even with low gains. The effect of low gains is only a slower velocity loop response.

4.1.5 Current Limiting Procedure

Before operating a drive, the current output of the drive must be limited based on motor and system current limitations. Depending on the drive model, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' AxCent servo drives feature a number of different current limiting methods. However, the procedure for setting the current limit will essentially be the same for each drive. Consult the drive datasheet to see what current limiting options are available on a specific drive.

The current limiting steps should be taken with no power applied to the drive.

1. The following option may be used to reduce the current limits:
 - If available, position any current scaling or current limit ratio DIP switches to the desired position (see "[Potentiometer Function Details](#)" on page 41).
2. If further current limiting is necessary, use the Current Limit potentiometer to "fine tune" the current limit to a final value (see "[Potentiometer Function Details](#)" on page 41).

Example

A drive is going to be used with an application having a continuous current requirement of 1.5 amps and a continuous current limit of 2.5 amps, and a peak current requirement of 6 amps,

and a peak current limit of 10 amps. The drive has a Current Scaling and Current Limit Ratio switch, a Current Limit potentiometer.

1. Typically it is recommended to set the current limits of the drive below the continuous and peak current limits of the motor or application, allowing some headroom for safety. In this case, the drive continuous current limit will be chosen at 2 amps, and the peak current limit at 9 amps.
2. Setting the Current Scaling switch to OFF will scale the peak and continuous current limits by half, yielding a peak limit of 15 amps, and a continuous limit of 7.5 amps.
3. Setting the Current Limit Ratio switch to OFF will change the continuous-to-peak current ratio to 25%, yielding a peak limit of 15 amps, and a continuous limit of 3.75 amps.
4. To further reduce the current limits to the desired values, the Current Limit potentiometer can be used. Begin with the continuous current requirement, using the equation to determine the number of clockwise turns for the Current Limit potentiometer:

$$\# \text{ of turns} = \frac{2\text{amps}}{3.75\text{amps}} 12 + 1$$

Solving for the number of turns yields approximately 7.5 turns in the clockwise direction from the fully counter-clockwise position.

5. Since the continuous-to-peak ratio was set at 25% in Step 3, the number of turns calculated above will yield a peak current limit of approximately 8 amps, thereby satisfying both the continuous and peak current requirements of the application.

4.1.6 Drive Set-up Instructions

Single Phase (Brush Type)

1. It is recommended to reduce the drive output current to avoid motor over heating during the setup procedure. Make sure the current has been set appropriately within the system and motor limits based on the procedure outlined in [“Current Limiting Procedure” on page 44](#).
2. Check the power and connect it to the drive. Do not connect the motor lead wires.
3. Make sure the drive is in an enabled state via all inhibit/enable inputs. See drive datasheet for details.
4. Check that the status LED indicates normal operation (GREEN).
5. Set mode according to the drive datasheet for Voltage Mode.
6. Set the Test/Offset switch to Test mode. Measure the voltage across the motor output with a DC voltmeter. Slowly turn the Test/Offset potentiometer; the voltage should vary between \pm bus voltage. Set the output voltage with the Test/Offset potentiometer to a low value.
7. Verify that the load circuit meets the minimum inductance requirements and that the power supply voltage does not exceed the drive rated voltage or 150% of the nominal motor voltage.
8. Turn the power off. Connect the motor. Turn the power back on. Gradually turn the Test/Offset potentiometer to change motor speed in both directions. Set the Test/Offset switch to Offset.
9. Ground both reference inputs and then using the Test/Offset potentiometer, set the motor for zero speed.

10. Set the control mode suitable for the application.

Three Phase (Brushless)

1. It is recommended to reduce the drive output current to avoid motor over heating during the setup procedure. Make sure the current has been set appropriately based on the procedure outlined in [“Current Limiting Procedure” on page 44](#).
2. According to the the mode selection table on the drive datasheet, set the drive for Duty Cycle (Open Loop) Mode, and set the Test/Offset switch to Test.
3. Check the power and connect it to the drive. Do not connect the motor lead wires.
4. Make sure the drive is in an enabled state via all enable inputs. See drive datasheet for details.
5. Set the Hall Sensor Commutation Switch for the appropriate phasing (typically 120 degree). Connect the Hall sensor inputs. The drive status LED should be GREEN. Manually turn the motor shaft one revolution. The LED should remain green. If the LED turns red or changes between green and red:
 - check the Hall Sensor Commutation Switch
 - check power for the Hall Sensors
 - check the voltage level of the Hall inputs (see [Table 4.3](#))
 - for 60 degree phasing interchange Hall 1 and Hall 2

(for more information see [“Invalid Hall Sensor State \(Brushless Drives only\)” on page 57](#))

TABLE 4.3 Commutation Sequence Table

	60 Degree			120 Degree			Motor		
	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Phase A	Phase B	Phase C
Valid	1	0	0	1	0	0	HIGH	-	LOW
	1	1	0	1	1	0	-	HIGH	LOW
	1	1	1	0	1	0	LOW	HIGH	-
	0	1	1	0	1	1	LOW	-	HIGH
	0	0	1	0	0	1	-	LOW	HIGH
	0	0	0	1	0	1	HIGH	LOW	-
Invalid	1	0	1	1	1	1	-	-	-
	0	1	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

6. Remove power. In all, there are six different ways to connect the three motor wires to the Motor A, Motor B, and Motor C pins. All six combinations must be tested to find the proper combination. The correct combination should yield approximately identical motor speed in both directions. If the motor runs slower in one direction, or if the motor shaft has to be moved manually by hand to start the motor, the combination is incorrect. Motor speed can be verified by using the velocity monitor or by measuring the frequency of the Hall Sensors.
7. To begin, connect the three motor wires in any order.
8. Apply power to the drive, and slowly turn the Test/Offset potentiometer in both directions. Observe the motor speed for both directions. Remove power from the drive, and rewire the three motor wires for a different combination. Test all six different combinations before proceeding.
9. Once the proper combination has been found, set the Test/Offset switch to Offset, ground both reference inputs, and then adjust the Test/Offset potentiometer for zero speed.
10. Set the control mode suitable for the application. If necessary, to change the motor direction for a given command input, interchange Hall 1 and Hall 3, then Motor A and Motor B.

Three Phase (Brushless) Drive with Brushed Motor Three Phase (Brushless) drives are also compatible with Single Phase (Brushed) motors. However, because there are no Hall Sensors on a brushed motor, one of the following course of actions must be taken to properly commutate the drive:

- Set the Hall Sensor Commutation Phasing DIP switch for 60-degree phasing. Leave all the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive open. These inputs are internally pulled high to +5V, creating a "1-1-1" commutation state (see [Table 4.3](#) above) which is a valid state in 60-degree phasing. Only use Motor A and Motor B output in this configuration.

or:

- Tie one of the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive to signal ground. Since the Hall Sensor inputs are by default internally brought high to +5V, this will put the drive in a commutation state where two Hall inputs are high, and one is low (as shown in [Table 4.3](#), having all three Hall inputs pulled high is an invalid commutation state in 120-degree phasing). Depending on which Hall Sensor input is tied to ground, consult [Table 4.3](#) to determine which two motor output wires will be conducting current for that specific commutation state.

4.1.7 Current Loop Tuning Procedure

The standard tuning values used in *ADVANCED* Motion Controls AxCent servo drives are conservative and work well in over 90% of applications. However some applications and some motors require more complete current loop tuning to achieve the desired performance. The following are indications that additional current loop tuning is necessary:

- Motor rapidly overheats even at low current
- Drive rapidly overheats even at low current
- Vibration sound comes from the drive or motor
- The motor has a high inductance (+10mH)
- The motor has a low inductance (near minimum rating of the drive)
- Slow system response times
- Excessive torque ripple
- Difficulty tuning position or velocity loops
- Electrical noise problems
- High power supply voltage (power supply is significantly higher than the motor voltage rating or near the drive's upper voltage limit)
- Low power supply voltage (power supply voltage is near the drive's lower voltage limit)

The above indicators are subjective and suggest that the current loop may need to be tuned. These can also be signs of other problems not related to current loop tuning.

The resistors and capacitors shown under the current control block on the datasheet block diagram determine the frequency response of the current loop. It is important to tune the current loop appropriately for the motor inductance and resistance, as well as the bus voltage

to obtain optimum performance. The loop gain and integrator capacitance of the current loop must both be adjusted for the tuning to be complete.



Caution

Improper current loop tuning may result in permanent drive and/or motor damage regardless of drive current limits.

Since most *ADVANCED* Motion Controls servo drives close the current loop internally, poor current loop tuning cannot be corrected with tuning from an external controller. Only after the current loop tuning is complete can optimal performance be achieved with the velocity and position loops.

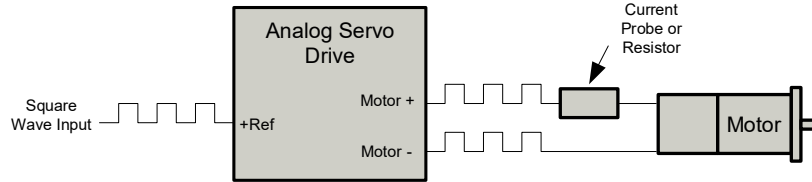
The general current loop tuning procedure follows these steps:

1. Determine if additional current loop tuning is necessary.
2. If available, tune the drive using the current loop DIP switches.
3. If the current loop cannot be satisfactorily tuned with the DIP switches, then the current loop components must be changed.
 - Tune the current loop proportional gain.
 - Tune the current loop integral gain.
4. Once the current loop is tuned, then the velocity and/or position loops may be tuned as well if necessary.

Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment The Current Loop Gain should be adjusted with the motor uncoupled from the load, and the motor secured as sudden motor shaft movement may occur. The following points should be kept in mind before beginning the tuning procedure:

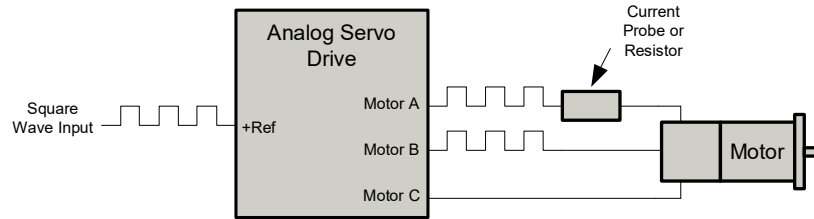
- Brushless drives should be configured for 60 degree phasing in order to get output current. The current can be measured through either motor phase A or B.
1. Use the DIP switches and Current Limit Potentiometer to select Current Mode, the input range (if applicable) and to set the appropriate current limit for the motor.
 2. Connect only the motor power leads to the drive. No other connections should be made at this point.
 3. Using a function generator, apply a ± 0.5 V, 50-100 Hz square wave reference signal to the input reference pins.
 4. Short out the current loop integrator capacitor(s) using the appropriate DIP switches or jumpers (see the specific drive datasheet and block diagram for details).
 5. Apply power to the drive. Use a bus voltage that is approximate to the desired application voltage or the current loop compensation will not be correct.
 6. The drive should be enabled (GREEN LED). Observe the motor current using a current probe or resistor in series with the motor (<10% of motor resistance). This observation should be done for both the high and low current loop gain (see drive datasheet for available current loop gain DIP switch settings). Different drives need to be set up differently to view the current loop response properly, as shown in the following figures.

FIGURE 4.2 Brushed Drives



Since the two motor wires are in series, the current through the wires is the same. The current probe can be attached to either wire with the same results. To keep the motor from turning during the tuning process the motor shaft must be locked.

FIGURE 4.3 Brushless Drives

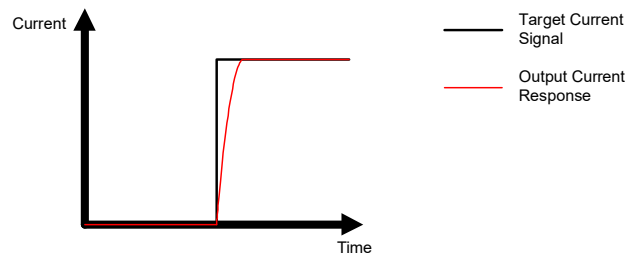


The current out of the drive can be forced to go through Motor A and Motor B by:
 1) Disconnecting the Hall sensors from the drive
 2) Setting the 60/120 degree phasing switch to 60 degrees

The motor shaft does not need to be locked since the drive will not commutate without the Hall Sensors.

7. The drive output should follow the input command. The best response will be a critically damped output waveform, similar to what is shown in [Figure 4.4](#).

FIGURE 4.4 Current Loop Response



8. If neither current loop gain DIP switch position gives a proper square wave response, then the current loop gain resistors may need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Additional Tuning”](#) on page 51 for more information.
9. When the proper response has been achieved, remove the input signal from the drive, and disconnect power.

Current Loop Integrator Adjustment

1. Enable the Current Loop Integrator through DIP switch or jumper settings (see the drive datasheet for available options).
2. Using a function generator, apply a $\pm 0.5V$, 50-100 Hz square wave reference signal.

3. Apply power to the drive. Use a bus voltage that is approximate to the desired application voltage or the current loop compensation will not be correct.
4. The drive should be enabled (GREEN LED). Observe the motor current using a current probe or resistor in series with the motor (<10% of motor resistance). If available, use any DIP switches to adjust the current loop integral gain capacitance. The output should settle to a flat top with minimal current following error (difference between commanded current and actual current). There can be some overshoot, but it should be less than 10%.



Notice

Because the oscilloscope measurements are voltage representations of current, the commanded and actual currents will most likely have different current to voltage scalings and tolerances. Therefore, even with perfect current loop tuning, the two amplitudes (scope traces) may not line up as shown in [Figure 4.4](#).

5. If the square wave output overshoots too much or is over-damped (sluggish), the current loop integrator capacitor will need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Additional Tuning” on page 51](#) for more information.

Voltage or Velocity Loop Tuning These adjustments should initially be performed with the motor uncoupled from the mechanical load.

Configure the drive for the desired operation mode using the DIP switch settings (see the block diagram on the specific drive datasheet).

- **Voltage Loop or Duty Cycle Loop**- Compensating the voltage loop requires the least amount of effort. Turn the Loop Gain potentiometer clockwise until oscillation occurs, then back off one turn.
- **IR Feedback Loop** - Start with a very high (or open) IR feedback resistor with an unloaded motor shaft. Command a low motor speed (about 20-200 RPM). Without the IR feedback the motor shaft can be stalled easily. Decreasing the IR feedback resistor will make the motor shaft more difficult to stop. Too much IR feedback, i.e. too low a resistor value, will cause motor run-away when torque is applied to the motor shaft.
- **Velocity Loop (Encoder, Halls, or Tachometer)** - The velocity loop response is determined by the Loop Gain potentiometer. A larger resistance value (clockwise) results in a faster response. The velocity integrator capacitor can be used to compensate for a large load inertia. A large load inertia will require a larger capacitor value. Either using the DIP switches to add in an extra capacitor or installing a through-hole capacitor may accomplish this (see [“Additional Tuning” on page 51](#) for more information). The need for an extra capacitor can be verified by shorting out the velocity integrator capacitor by DIP switch setting. If the velocity loop is stable with the capacitor shorted out, and unstable with the capacitor in the circuit, then a larger capacitor value is needed.

Analog Position Loop Use of an encoder or tachometer for velocity feedback is recommended to obtain a responsive position loop, since the position loop is closed around the velocity loop. First the velocity loop must be stabilized (or voltage loop for undemanding applications). The position loop gain is determined by the fixed gain of the input differential amplifier of the drive. Contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for additional information on configuration for analog position loop mode.

Additional Tuning

In general, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' AxCent servo drives will not need further tuning adjustments. However, for applications requiring more precise tuning than what is offered by the configuration DIP switches and potentiometers, adjustments to the tuning circuitry can be made either with on-board tuning DIP switches or with through-hole resistors and capacitors as denoted in [Table A.1](#) below. Consult the drive datasheet to see which option is available. On most drives, the through-hole locations are not populated when the drive is shipped.

It is recommended to contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls to discuss application requirements and proper drive tuning prior to adding and through-hole components.



Notice

Any damage done to the drive while performing these modifications will void the product warranty.

Before adjusting the tuning DIP switches or attempting to add through-hole components to the board, see [“Current Loop Tuning Procedure” on page 47](#). Some general rules to follow when adjusting the tuning circuitry are:

- A larger resistor value will increase the proportional gain, and therefore create a faster response time.
- Use non-polarized capacitors.
- A larger capacitor value will increase the integration time, and therefore create a slower response time.

A.1 Tuning DIP Switches

Certain drive models feature DIP switches on the drive PCB that are used for tuning adjustments. Note that these tuning DIP switches are different from the drive configuration DIP switch bank (SW1). The configuration DIP switch bank is accessible from the connector side of the drive, while the tuning DIP switches are only accessible if the drive cover is removed.

Tuning DIP switches are available for the following functions:

- Adding additional current loop proportional gain resistance
- Adding additional current loop integrator gain capacitance
- Adding additional velocity loop integrator gain capacitance

Consult the drive datasheet for a table of the resistance and capacitance values that can be achieved using the tuning DIP switches. Follow the procedure in “[Procedure](#)” on page 53 to properly tune the drive.

A.2 Through-Hole Tuning

Proper tuning using through-hole components will require careful observation of the loop response on a digital oscilloscope to find the optimal through-hole component values for the specific application.

The following are some helpful hints to make the loop tuning process easier:

- **Use pin receptacles to reduce the need for soldering** - Some drives have pin receptacles that make it easy to change the tuning resistors and capacitors without the need for soldering. Other drives do not have these receptacles, so soldering is required. To avoid the need to solder every time a tuning value needs to be changed a pin receptacle can be soldered into the through hole location of the tuning component.
- **Use a potentiometer to find the correct current loop gain value** - A potentiometer can be used to continuously adjust the gain resistance value during the tuning process. Install a potentiometer in place of the gain resistor. Adjust the potentiometer while viewing the current loop response on an oscilloscope. When the optimal response is achieved turn off the drive, remove the potentiometer, and measure the potentiometer resistance. Use the closest resistor value available. (Note: This method will not work if the optimal tuning value is beyond the range of the potentiometer. This method also does not work for sine drives since it is difficult to keep the tuning values in the three current loops the same).
- **Progressively double the resistance value when tuning the current loop gain for faster results** - If the gain resistor needs to be increased during the tuning process the fastest results are achieved by doubling the resistance from the last value tried. Use this method until overshoot is observed and then fine tune from there.
- **Be aware of any components that are in parallel with the values you are trying to tune** - On some drives, there may be one or more gain resistors in parallel with the through-hole resistor location. The equivalent resistance value of the SMT resistors on the board and the additional through-hole resistor will be limited by the smallest resistance value of the group of resistors in parallel. Consult the block diagram on the drive datasheet

to determine the specific resistor values. The same situation can occur when trying to decrease the integrator capacitor value, since capacitors in parallel will be added together.

- **Safety**



Caution

Always remove power when changing components on the drive.



Caution

Float the oscilloscope and function generator grounds to avoid large ground currents.



DANGER

Decouple the motor from the load to avoid being injured by sudden motor movements.

Table A.1 lists the different through-hole components that can be used for loop tuning. Consult the drive datasheet to see which options are available for a specific drive. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls Applications Engineering for assistance in determining the PCB location of the through-hole component options for the drive model in use.

TABLE A.1 Through-Hole Tuning Component

Component	Description
Current Loop Proportional Gain Resistor	Through-hole resistor that can be added for more precise current loop tuning.
Current Loop Integrator Capacitor	Through-hole capacitor that can be added for more precise current loop tuning.
Velocity Loop Integrator Capacitor	Through-hole capacitor that can be added for more precise velocity loop tuning.

A.3 Procedure

Before adjusting the tuning DIP switches or changing any components on the PCB, follow the steps in “[Current Loop Tuning Procedure](#)” on page 47 to determine if any additional tuning is necessary. Observe the drive output current response on an oscilloscope for all the different DIP switch gain settings (if available on the drive in use). If further tuning is necessary or desired, please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls before proceeding through the following steps.

Tune the Current Loop Proportional Gain

1. Follow the steps outlined in “[Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment](#)” on page 48 up through Step 8.

2. Observe the drive current response on an oscilloscope. Small step tuning is different than large step tuning, so adjust the function generator square wave amplitude so the drive outputs a current step similar to what will be expected in typical operation.
 - If the current response does not rise quickly enough to the step input command, or if it never reaches the input command, the equivalent resistance of the current loop proportional gain resistor will need to be increased. This will increase the current loop proportional gain, and achieve a faster, more aggressive response.
 - If the current response overshoots the step input command, the equivalent resistance of the current loop proportional gain resistor will need to be decreased. This will decrease the current loop proportional gain, and provide a slower, more stable response.
3. Finding an acceptable equivalent resistance may take a few iterations. If using a drive model with through-hole tuning components, using pin receptacles or an external potentiometer will make the process easier. Remember to remove power from the drive prior to changing the tuning DIP switches, or removing or adding any components to the PCB. Also remember that it is not just the through-hole resistor value that is important, but the equivalent resistance of the through-hole resistor and any SMT resistors that may be in parallel with the through-hole location. Use the block diagram on the drive datasheet to assist in determining the equivalent gain resistance.
4. Use an equivalent resistance value that brings the current response right to the point of overshoot. If there is a large amount of overshoot, or if there are oscillations, decrease the equivalent resistance value until there is little or no overshoot. Depending on the application requirements, a little overshoot is acceptable, but should never exceed 10%.
5. When an acceptable resistance value has been found, remove power from the drive.

Tune the Current Loop Integral Gain

1. After the proportional gain resistance has been adjusted to an acceptable value, re-enable the current loop integrator capacitor (either through DIP switch or jumper settings, depending on the drive model).
2. Using the same function generator input command as in the previous section, apply power to the drive and observe the current loop response on an oscilloscope.
3. Depending on the drive model, the current loop integrator capacitor can be changed or shorted out of the circuit by DIP switch setting. Test both settings while observing the current loop response.
 - If the current response square wave oscillates or overshoots, a larger equivalent capacitance value is necessary.
 - If the current response square wave corners are too rounded, a smaller equivalent capacitance value is necessary to sharpen the corners.
4. As in the previous section, using pin receptacles at the through-hole locations will greatly assist in finding an acceptable capacitance value. Also keep in mind that the through-hole capacitor location may be in parallel with SMT capacitors on the PCB. Use the block diagram on the drive datasheet to determine the equivalent integrator capacitance value (capacitors in parallel add together).
5. Although the ideal current loop response after integral gain tuning will be a critically damped square wave, the application requirements will determine what the desired response will be (i.e. how much overshoot, steady-state error, oscillation, is acceptable).

Velocity Loop Integral Gain Tuning The velocity loop proportional gain is adjusted by the on-board Loop Gain potentiometer. The velocity loop integral gain can be adjusted by DIP switch settings similar to the current loop integral gain (capacitance value can be changed, capacitor can be shorted out, extra capacitor can be added in parallel). However, some drive models also include additional through-hole locations where through-hole capacitors can be added to further adjust the velocity loop integral gain. As in tuning the current loop integral gain, use larger value equivalent capacitors to correct for overshoot or oscillation, and smaller value equivalent capacitors for a quicker response time.

This section discusses how to ensure optimum performance and, if necessary, get assistance from the factory.

B.1 Fault Conditions and Symptoms

An inoperative drive can indicate any of the following fault conditions:

- over-temperature
- over-voltage
- under-voltage
- short-circuits
- invalid commutation
- inhibit input
- power-on reset

All of the above fault conditions are self-reset by the drive. Once the fault condition is removed the drive will become operative again without cycling power. To determine whether the drive is in a fault state, measure the “**Fault Output**” pin with a digital multimeter or voltmeter. A high at this pin (or a low, depending on the drive model and configuration - see drive datasheet) will indicate that the drive is subject to one of the above fault conditions, and the drive will be disabled until the drive is no longer in a fault state. To remove the fault condition, follow the instructions in the sections below describing each possible fault state.

Over-Temperature Verify that the baseplate temperature is less than the maximum allowable baseplate temperature as denoted on the drive datasheet, typically 65°C (149°F) or 75°C (167°F). The drive remains disabled until the temperature at the drive baseplate falls below this threshold.

Over-Voltage Shutdown

1. Check the DC power supply voltage for a value above the drive over-voltage shutdown limit. If the DC bus voltage is above this limit, check the AC power line connected to the DC power supply for proper value.
2. Check the regenerative energy absorbed during deceleration. This is done by monitoring the DC bus voltage with a voltmeter or oscilloscope. If the DC bus voltage increases above the drive over-voltage shutdown limit during deceleration or regeneration, a shunt

regulator may be necessary. See [“Regeneration and Shunt Regulators” on page 22](#) for more information.

Under-Voltage Shutdown Verify power supply voltages for minimum conditions per specifications. Also note that the drive will pull the power supply voltage down if the power supply cannot provide the required current for the drive. This could occur when high current is demanded and the power supply is pulled below the minimum operating voltage required by the drive.

Short Circuit Fault

1. Check each motor lead for shorts with respect to motor housing and power ground. If the motor is shorted it will not rotate freely when no power is applied while it is uncoupled from the load.
2. Disconnect the motor leads to see if the drive will enable without the motor connected. If the drive enables with the motor disconnected, there is a possible short circuit in the motor wiring.
3. Measure motor armature resistance between motor leads with the drive disconnected. Verify these measurements against the motor datasheet to determine if there is a short or open circuit in the motor windings.

Invalid Hall Sensor State (Brushless Drives only) See the “Commutation Sequence” table in [“Hall Sensors” on page 11](#) for valid commutation states. If the drive is disabled check the following:

1. Make sure that the Hall Sensor Commutation Phasing switch is in the correct setting per motor data sheets. When driving a single phase (brushed type) motor with a three phase (brushless) drive use the 60-degree phase setting (see [“Three Phase \(Brushless\) Drive with Brushed Motor” on page 47](#) for more information on this particular configuration).
2. Check the voltage levels for all the Hall Sensor inputs. Turn the motor by hand while measuring the Hall Sensor inputs to verify that all three Hall Sensors are changing. The voltage should read approximately +5V for a "high (1)" Hall state, and approximately 0V for a "low (0)" Hall state.
3. Make sure all Hall Sensor lines are connected properly.

Inhibit Input Check inhibit input for correct polarity (that is, pull-to-ground to inhibit or pull-to-ground to enable). Inhibit configuration depends either on the DIP switch settings or a 0 ohm SMT resistor marked on the board. Also, keep in mind that noise on the inhibit line could be a cause for a false inhibit signal being given to the drive.

Power-On Reset All drives have a power-on reset function to ensure that all circuitry on the board is functional prior to enabling the drive. The board will only be disabled momentarily, and will quickly enable upon power up.

B.1.1 Overload

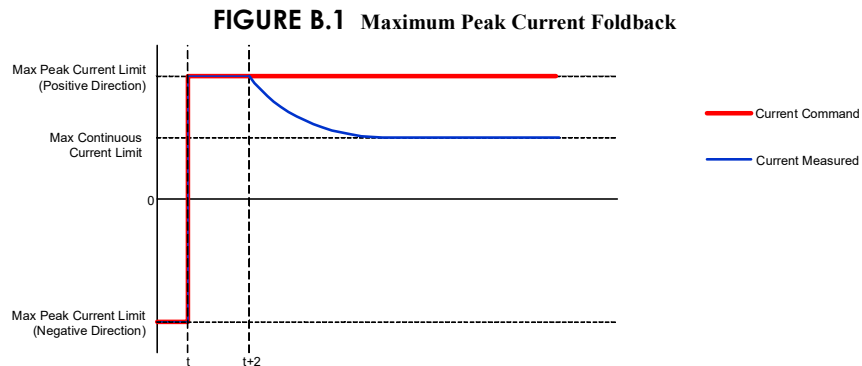
Verify that the minimum inductance requirement is met. If the inductance is too low it could appear like a short circuit to the drive and thus it might cause the short circuit fault to trip.

Excessive heating of the drive and motor is also characteristic of the minimum inductance requirement not being met. See drive datasheet for minimum inductance requirements.

B.1.2 Current Limiting

Most analog servo drives incorporate a “fold-back” circuit for protection against over-current. This “fold-back” circuit uses an approximate “ I^2t ” algorithm to protect the drive. (see “[Non-Foldback Current Limiting](#)” on page 59 for S-Series and Direct PWM drives current limiting description)

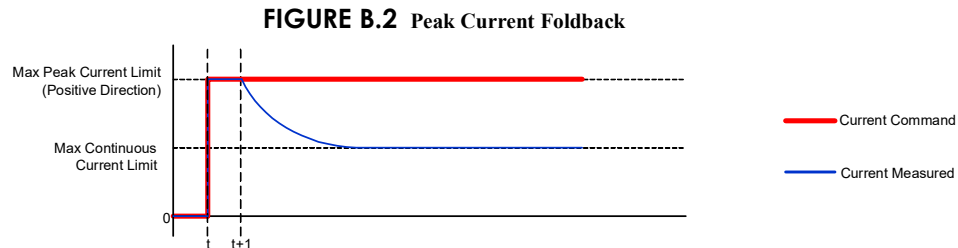
- Maximum peak current output level can be sustained for about 2 seconds.
- To actually achieve maximum peak current output for 2 seconds requires the current command to fully swing from peak in one direction to the other.



Caution

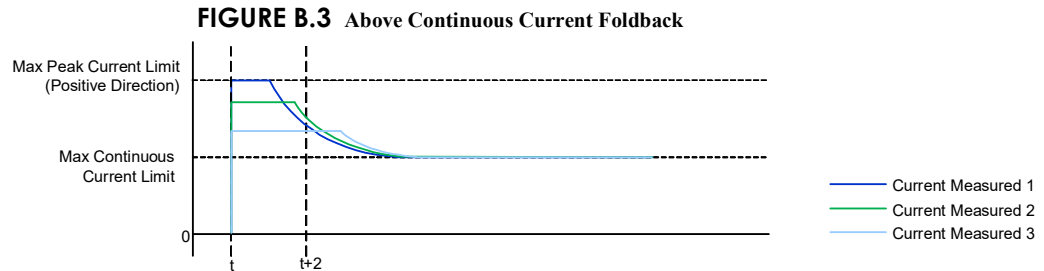
Sustained maximum current demand, when switching between positive and negative maximum current without allowing sufficient time for fold-back, will result in drive damage. Drive RMS current should be below the continuous current rating!

- For most applications, it’s a rare occurrence to fully swing from peak in one direction to the other. It is more likely the drive will be commanded from zero to max peak current. Under this condition, the drive will only sustain the maximum peak current for about one second.



- Commanding maximum peak current output starting from above zero command will also yield reduced peak current output time.

- When commanding output current less than the max peak limit, but more than the max continuous limit, the current output can be sustained for a longer time period than a maximum peak command before folding back.



- The closer the commanded current is to the peak current limit, the shorter the peak output time will be.
- Any command at or below the maximum continuous current limit can be achieved for as long as there are no fault conditions present.
- When the drive is configured for any of the velocity modes, the user is no longer in direct control of the current output. The current commands will be determined by the velocity loop. Though internally the current loop still functions like it is described above, it will do only what is necessary to meet the velocity demand. The current output depends on:
 - How tight the velocity loop is tuned
 - The load characteristics
 - The speed the motor is already turning
 - Magnitude and slope of velocity step

Non-Foldback Current Limiting On S-Series and Direct PWM ("BD" and "DD") drives, if the RMS current through any motor phase rises above the maximum continuous current value, the over current fault output pin will trigger a fault state, and the drive will be disabled until the RMS current value has returned to a value within the acceptable operating range. Typically this results in the drive output rapidly switching on and off (several 100 Hz) until the command signal is reduced to a value below the continuous current rating of the drive.

B.1.3 Motor Problems

A motor run-away condition is when the motor spins rapidly with no control from the command input. The most likely cause of this error comes from having the feedback element connected for positive feedback. This can be solved by changing the order that the feedback element lines are connected to the drive, or changing the feedback polarity switch on the DIP switch bank to the opposite setting.

Another common motor issue for brushless motors with Hall Sensor commutation is when the motor spins faster in one direction than in the other for the same velocity command in the opposite direction. This is typically caused by improper commutation, usually because the motor power wires are connected in the wrong order with respect to the Hall Sensor wiring. Try all six combinations of connecting the motor power wires to the drive to find the correct commutation order. The proper combination of motor wires will yield smooth motion and identical speeds in both directions. Improper combinations will cause jerky motion, slow movement in one direction, and/or audible noise. As a final verification that the commutation

is correct, use the Velocity Monitor Output pin to measure motor speed in both directions . This can also be caused by invalid Hall phasing. Check to see if the drive is set for 120- or 60-degree phasing, and verify that the drive DIP switch setting corresponds to the Hall phasing used on the motor. See “Hall Sensors” on page 11 for more information.

For a brushless drive, if the opposite motor direction is desired for a given command input, interchange Hall 1 and Hall 3, then Motor A and Motor B.

B.1.4 Causes of Erratic Operation

- Improper grounding (i.e. drive signal ground is not connected to source signal ground).
- Noisy command signal. Check for system ground loops.
- Mechanical backlash, dead-band, slippage, etc.
- Noisy inhibit input line.
- Excessive voltage spikes on bus.

B.2 Technical Support

For help from the manufacturer regarding drive set-up or operating problems, please gather the following information.

1. Model Number: This is the main product identifier. The model number can have a suffix designating a change from the base model.
2. Revision Letter: Product revision level letter ('A' is the earliest release from any model).
3. Version: The version number is used to track minor product upgrades with the same model number and revision letter ('01' is the earliest release of any revision).
4. Proto Designation: When included, indicates that the model is a prototype unit and model number will also begin with an 'X' designator.
5. Serial Number: The serial number consists of a 5-digit lot number followed by a 4-digit sequence number. Each product is assigned a unique serial number to track product life cycle history.
6. Date Code: The date code is a 4-digit number signifying the year and week of manufacture. The first two digits designate the year and the second two digits designate the week (e.g. the drive label shown would have been built in the year 2011 during the 18th week).
7. Input and Output Power Data: Includes basic power parameters of the product.
8. General Information: Displays applicable agency approvals, UL file reference number, and compliance approvals. More complete product information is available by following the listed website.

B.2.1 Drive Model Information

- DC bus voltage and range
- Motor type (brushed, brushless, AC induction)
- Motor characteristics (inductance, torque constant, winding resistance, etc.)
- Position of all DIP switches

- Length and make-up of all wiring and cables
- If brushless, include Hall sensor information
- Type of controller and full description of feedback devices
- Description of problem: instability, run-away, noise, over/under shoot, etc.
- Complete part number and serial number of the product. Original purchase order is helpful, but not necessary

B.3 Warranty Returns and Factory Help

Seller warrants that all items will be delivered free from defects in material and workmanship and in conformance with contractual requirements. The Seller makes no other warranties, express or implied and specifically NO WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. The Seller's exclusive liability for breach of warranty shall be limited to repairing or replacing at the Seller's option items returned to Seller's plant at Buyer's expense within one year of the date of delivery. The Seller's liability on any claim of any kind, including negligence, for loss or damage arising out of, connected with or resulting from this order, or from the performance or breach thereof or from the manufacture, sale, delivery, resale, repair or use of any item or services covered by or furnished under this order shall in no case exceed the price allocable to the item or service or part thereof which gives rise to the claim and in the event Seller fails to manufacture or deliver items other than standard products that appear in Seller's catalog. Seller's exclusive liability and Buyer's exclusive remedy shall be release of the Buyer from the obligation to pay the purchase price. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SELLER BE LIABLE FOR SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. Buyer will take all appropriate measures to advise users and operators of the products delivered hereunder of all potential dangers to persons or property, which may be occasioned by such use. Buyer will indemnify and hold Seller harmless from all claims of any kind for injuries to persons and property arising from use of the products delivered hereunder. Buyer will, at its sole cost, carry liability insurance adequate to protect Buyer and Seller against such claims.

All returns (warranty or non-warranty) require that you first obtain a Return Material Authorization (RMA) number from the factory. Request an RMA number by:

web	www.a-m-c.com/download/form/form_rma.html
telephone	(805) 389-1935
fax	(805) 389-1165

Symbols

±10V Analog Command	9
±10V Analog Input Wiring	37

A

AC Supply Frequency	8
AC Supply Voltage Range	8
Agency Compliances	ii
Altitude	25
Analog Position Loop Tuning	50
Attention Symbols	iii

B

Baseplate Temperature Range	25
Brushed Servo Drives	6
Brushless AC Supply Drives	4
Brushless DC Supply Drives	4
Brushless Servo Drives	6
Brushless Servo System	7
Bus Fuse	8

C

Capacitive Interference Coupling	32
CE-EMC Wiring Requirements	29
Central Point Grounding	31
Command Inputs	9
Commutation Sequence Table 12, 46	
Company Website	ii
Continuous Regeneration	24
Controller Chassis	31
Crimp Tool	32
Current (Torque) Mode	13
Current Limit Potentiometer	42
Current Limiting	44, 58
Current Loop Gain	48
Current Loop Integrator	49
Current Monitor Output	39
Current Reference Output	40

D

Daisy Chains	34
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	8
DC Power Supplies	34
DC Power Supply Wiring	34
DC Supply Voltage Range	8
DIP Switch Settings	43

Drive Case Grounding	31
Drive Datasheet	4
Drive Set-up Instructions	45–47
Duty Cycle Mode	13
Dwell Time	16

E

Electromagnetic Interference	32
Encoder Velocity Mode	14
Environmental Specifications	25
Error Signal	10
External Filter Card	18

F

Fault Conditions	56–58
Fault Output	40
Feedback Polarity	10
Feedback Specifications	10–12
Feedback Wiring	35–36
Fold-back	58
Frequency Factor	24

G

Ground Loops	31, 33
Grounding	31

H

Hall Sensors	
Feedback	11
Wiring	35
Hall Velocity Mode	13
Humidity	25

I

Impedance	32
Incremental Encoder	
Feedback	10
Wiring	36
Inhibit Input	40, 57
Input Reference Wiring	37–??
Interference Coupling	32
Internal Bus Capacitance	8
Internal Shunt Resistance	8
Internal Shunt Resistor	
Power Rating	8
Turn-on Voltage	8
Invalid Hall Commutation	57

IR Compensation Mode	15
IR Feedback Loop Tuning	50
Isolated Power Supply	21
Isolation	21

L

Linear Motor Equation	17
Lock-out/tag-out Procedures	1
Loop Gain Potentiometer	42
Low Voltage Power Outputs	41
LVD Requirements	28

M

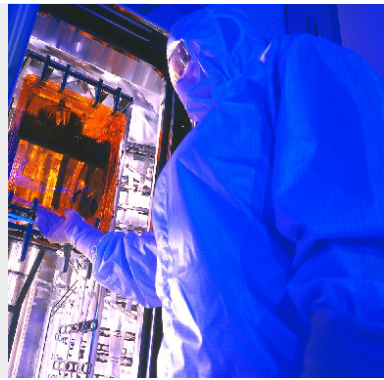
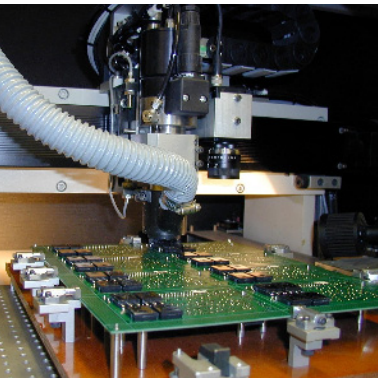
Magnetic Interference Coupling	32
Max. Continuous Output Current	8
Max. Peak Output Current	8
Max. Power Dissipation at Continuous Current	8
Mechanical Shock	25
Minimum Load Inductance	8
Modes of Operation	13–15
Current (Torque)	13
Duty Cycle (Open Loop)	13
Encoder Velocity	14
Hall Velocity	13
IR Compensation	15
Tachometer Velocity	14
Voltage Mode	14
Motion Control System	5
Motor "Run-Away"	10
Motor Back-EMF Voltage	17
Motor Chassis	31
Motor Current	16, 19
Motor Current Frequency	18
Motor Force	17
Motor Inductance	3, 18
Overload	57
Motor Problems	59
Motor Resistance	17
Motor Run-Away	59
Motor Torque Constant	16
Motor Voltage	17, 19
Motor Wiring	33
Mounting Options	38
Move Profile	15
Multiple Power Supply Wiring	34

N			
Negative Feedback.....	10		
Noise.....	32		
Nominal Power Supply Voltage	19		
O			
Overload.....	57		
Over-Temperature	56		
Over-Voltage Shutdown	56		
P			
PE Ground	31		
Peak Current Fold-back.....	58		
Peak Torque	16		
Pin Functions	39–41		
Positive Feedback	10		
Potentiometer Functions	41		
Potentiometer Test Points	42		
Potentiometer Tool.....	42		
Power Ground.....	31		
Power Outputs, Low Voltage	41		
Power Stage Specifications	8		
Power Supply Capacitance.. 2, 24, 33			
Power Supply Chassis	31		
Power Supply Current.....	20		
Power Supply Output Current 19, 24			
Power Supply Wiring	33		
Power-on Reset.....	57		
Products Covered	4		
Protective Earth.....	31		
PWM Current Control Circuit	5		
R			
REF IN, -.....	37		
REF IN, +.....	37		
Reference Gain Potentiometer	42		
Regeneration.....	22		
Continuous	24		
Returns	61		
Revision History	iii		
RMS Torque.....	17		
S			
Safety	1–3		
Scaling Factor.....	14		
Selection and Sizing.....	15–25		
Servo Drive Theory.....	5–??		
Shielding.....	31, 32		
Shock/Vibration	26		
Short Circuit Fault	57		
Shunt Fuse.....	8		
Shunt Regulator	20, 22		
Signal Ground	31		
Single Phase Servo Drives	6		
Switch Functions	43		
Switching Frequency	8		
System Requirements	15–25		
System Voltage Requirement.....	17		
T			
Tachometer			
Feedback	12		
Velocity Mode.....	14		
Wiring.....	36		
Technical Support.....	60		
Test Points (Pots).....	42		
Test/Offset Potentiometer	42		
Three Phase Servo Drives	6		
Three-Phase AC Supply	35		
Through-hole Components.....	51		
Torque.....	16		
Trademarks	ii		
Troubleshooting	56–61		
Tuning			
Procedure	47–50		
Through-Hole Components	51–55		
Twisted Pair Wires	32		
U			
Under-Voltage Shutdown	57		
V			
Velocity Loop Tuning.....	50		
Velocity Monitor Output.....	41		
Velocity Scaling Factor	41		
Vibration.....	25		
Voltage Drop Interference.....	32		
Voltage Loop Tuning.....	50		
Voltage Mode.....	14		
Voltage Ripple	24		
W			
Warning Symbols.....	iii		
Warranty Info.....	61		
Warranty Returns	61		
Wire Diameter	32		
Wire Gauge.....	32		
Wiring.....	32–??		

AxCent™ Panel Mount Drives
Hardware Installation Manual
MNACHWIN-06



3805 Calle Tecate • Camarillo, CA 93012-5068
Tel: (805) 389-1935 Fax: (805) 389-1165 www.a-m-c.com



Everything's possible.

PCB Mount AxCent™ Drives

for Servo Systems

Hardware

Installation Manual



Preface

ADVANCED Motion Controls constantly strives to improve all of its products. We review the information in this document regularly and we welcome any suggestions for improvement. We reserve the right to modify equipment and documentation without prior notice.

For the most recent software, the latest revisions of this manual, and copies of compliance and declarations of conformity, visit the company's website at www.a-m-c.com. Otherwise, contact the company directly at:

ADVANCED Motion Controls • 3805 Calle Tecate Camarillo, CA • 93012-5068 USA

Agency Compliances

The company holds original documents for the following:

- UL 508c, file number E140173
- Electromagnetic Compatibility, EMC Directive - 2014/30/EU
EN61000-6-2:2005
EN61000-6-4:2007/A1:2011
Electrical Safety, Low Voltage Directive - 2014/35/EU
EN 60204-1:2006/A1:2009
- Reduction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS III), 2015/863/EU

Trademarks

ADVANCED Motion Controls™, the combined isosceles trapezoid/right triangle logo, **DIGIFLEX®**, **DIGIFLEX® Performance™**, AxCent™ and DriveWare® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of *ADVANCED* Motion Controls in the United States and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Related Documentation

- Product datasheet specific for your drive, available for download at www.a-m-c.com.

Attention Symbols

The following symbols are used throughout this document to draw attention to important operating information, special instructions, and cautionary warnings. The section below outlines the overall directive of each symbol and what type of information the accompanying text is relaying.



Note

Note - Pertinent information that clarifies a process, operation, or ease-of-use preparations regarding the product.



Notice

Notice - Required instruction necessary to ensure successful completion of a task or procedure.



Caution

Caution - Instructs and directs you to avoid damaging equipment.



Warning

Warning - Instructs and directs you to avoid harming yourself.



DANGER

Danger - Presents information you must heed to avoid serious injury or death.

Revision History

Document ID	Revision #	Date	Changes
MNALAZIN-01	1	9/2008	- First Release
MNALAZIN-02	2	10/2008	- Updated Pads Layout Diagram, Figure 3.12 - Updated Pin Layout Diagram, Figure 2.8 - Added Tachometer Velocity information (also see page 12 , page 46 , and page 51)
MNALAZIN-03	3	6/2009	- Added AZ_40A8 drive model information
MNALAZIN-04	4	11/2009	- Added MC1XAZ01-HR information to Mounting Cards section
MNALAZIN-05	5	10/2010	- Added AZ_10A20 and AZ_25A20 drive model information
MNALAZIN-06	6	1/2011	- Added AZ_25A20 data to Ambient Temperature Range and Thermal Data
MNALAZIN-07	7	4/2011	- Added AZBE25A20 and AZBH25A20 drive model information
MNALAZIN-08	8	5/2013	- Added AZ_60A8 drive model information
MNALAZIN-09	9	1/2014	- Added AZ_10A4 drive model information
MNALAZIN-10	10	5/2014	- Added MC1XAZ02 mounting card information
MNALAZIN-11	11	2/2015	- Added AZ_10A4IC drive model information
MNALAZIN-12	12	5/2015	- Added AZBH10A4 and AZBD10A4 drive model information
MNALAZIN-13	13	9/2015	- Added AZBE10A4 drive model information
MNALAZIN-14	14	4/2016	- Added AZBE10A4IC, AZBH10A4IC, and AZBD10A4IC drive model information
MNALAZIN-15	15	8/2018	- Removed AZBE10A4IC, AZBH10A4IC, and AZBD10A4IC drive model information

© 2018 *ADVANCED* Motion Controls. All rights reserved.



Contents

1 Safety **1**

1.1 General Safety Overview	1
-----------------------------------	---

2 Products and System Requirements **4**

2.1 Drive Family Overview	4
2.1.1 Drive Datasheet	4
2.2 Analog PWM Servo Drive Basics and Theory	5
2.2.1 Single Phase (Brushed) Motors	6
2.2.2 Three Phase (Brushless) Motors	6
2.3 Products Covered	7
2.4 Control Modes	8
2.4.1 Current (Torque)	8
2.4.2 Duty Cycle (Open Loop)	8
2.4.3 Hall Velocity	9
2.4.4 Encoder Velocity	9
2.4.5 Tachometer Velocity	9
2.5 Feedback Supported	10
2.5.1 Feedback Polarity	10
2.5.2 Hall Sensors	10
Using a Single Phase Motor	11
2.5.3 Encoder Feedback	12
2.5.4 Tachometer Feedback	12
2.6 Pin Layout	13
2.7 Features and Control Specifications	14
2.7.1 AZB	14
2.7.2 AZBDC	14

2.7.3 AZBE	14
2.7.4 AZBH	14
2.7.5 Block Diagrams	14
2.7.6 Pinouts	15
2.8 System Requirements	16
2.8.1 Analog Servo Drive Selection and Sizing	16
Motor Current and Voltage	16
Motor Inductance	18
2.8.2 Power Supply Selection and Sizing	19
Power Supply Current and Voltage	19
Isolation	21
Regeneration and Shunt Regulators	21
Voltage Ripple	24
2.8.3 Environment	25
Ambient Temperature Range and Thermal Data	25
Shock/Vibrations	27

3 Integration in the Servo System

28

3.1 LVD Requirements	28
3.2 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements	29
General	29
Analog Input Drives	29
PWM Input Drives	29
MOSFET Switching Drives	29
IGBT Switching Drives	29
Fitting of AC Power Filters	29
3.2.1 Ferrite Suppression Core Set-up	30
3.2.2 Inductive Filter Cards	30
3.3 Grounding	30
3.4 Wiring	31
3.4.1 Wire Gauge	32
3.4.2 Motor Wires	32
3.4.3 Power Supply Wires	32
3.4.4 Feedback Wires	33
3.4.5 Input Reference Wires	33
3.5 Mounting	35
3.5.1 Mounting Cards	35
AZB10A4IC	37

3.5.2 PCB Mounting Options	38
Mating Connectors	38
Soldering	39
Screw Mounting	39
Direct Cabling	40
3.6 PCB Design	41
3.6.1 Trace Width and Routing	41
3.7 Interface Circuitry Examples	42
DC Power Input	42
Motor Power Output	43
Hall Sensor Inputs	44
Encoder Inputs	44
.....	45
±10V Analog Reference Input	45
Potentiometer Input	45
PWM and Direction Input	46
Tachometer Input	46
Offset Input	46
Inhibit Input	47
Current Monitor Output	47
Current Reference Output	47
Fault Output	48

4 Operation

49

4.1 Getting Started	49
4.1.1 Input/Output Pin Functions	49
Current Monitor Output	49
Current Reference Output	49
Fault Output	50
Inhibit Input	50
Low Power Supply Output	50
Velocity Monitor Output	51
Tachometer Input	51
4.1.2 Potentiometer Function Details	51
Potentiometer Tool	51
4.2 Initial Setup	52
4.2.1 Current (Torque) Mode Test	52
Connections Test	52

Power Supply	52
Input Command Wiring	52
Hall Sensors	53
Motor	54
Applying a Command (Analog Input)	54
Motor Direction	55
4.3 Tuning Procedure	56
Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment	57
Current Loop Integrator Adjustment	58
Duty Cycle or Velocity Loop Tuning	59

A Loop Tuning **60**

A.1 Loop Tuning	60
A.1.1 Procedure	61
Tune the Current Loop Proportional Gain	61
Tune the Current Loop Integral Gain	62
Velocity Loop Tuning	62

B Specifications **63**

B.1 Specifications Tables	63
---------------------------------	----

C Troubleshooting **69**

C.1 Fault Conditions and Symptoms	69
Over-Temperature	69
Over-Voltage Shutdown	69
Under-Voltage Shutdown	70
Short Circuit Fault	70
Invalid Hall Sensor State	70
Inhibit Input	70
Power-On Reset	70
C.1.1 Overload	70
C.1.2 Current Limiting	70
C.1.3 Motor Problems	72

C.1.4 Causes of Erratic Operation	72
C.2 Technical Support	73
C.2.1 Drive Model Information	73
C.2.2 Product Label Description	73
C.3 Warranty Returns and Factory Help	74

Index I

1 Safety

This section discusses characteristics of your PCB mount AxCent™ Drive to raise your awareness of potential risks and hazards. The severity of consequences ranges from frustration of performance, through damage to equipment, injury or death. These consequences, of course, can be avoided by good design and proper installation into your mechanism.

1.1 General Safety Overview

In order to install an AxCent™ drive into a servo system, you must have a thorough knowledge and understanding of basic electronics, computers and mechanics as well as safety precautions and practices required when dealing with the possibility of high voltages or heavy, strong equipment.

Observe your facility's lock-out/tag-out procedures so that work can proceed without residual power stored in the system or unexpected movements by the machine.



Notice

You must install and operate motion control equipment so that you meet all applicable safety requirements. Ensure that you identify the relevant standards and comply with them. Failure to do so may result in damage to equipment and personal injury.

Read this entire manual prior to attempting to install or operate the drive. Become familiar with practices and procedures that allow you to operate these drives safely and effectively. You are responsible for determining the suitability of this product for the intended application. The manufacturer is neither responsible nor liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the inappropriate use of this product.



Caution

Over current protective devices recognized by an international safety agency must be installed in line before the servo drive. These devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the device installation instructions and the specifications of the servo drive (taking into consideration inrush currents, etc.). Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over current protection in the end user's equipment.



Notice

High-performance motion control equipment can move rapidly with very high forces. Unexpected motion may occur especially during product commissioning. Keep clear of any operational machinery and never touch them while they are working.



Warning

Keep clear of all exposed power terminals (motor, DC Bus, shunt, DC power, transformer) when power is applied to the equipment. Follow these safety guidelines:

- Always turn off the main power and allow sufficient time for complete discharge before making any connections to the drive.
- Do not rotate the motor shaft without power. The motor acts as a generator and will charge up the power supply capacitors through the drive. Excessive speeds may cause over-voltage breakdown in the power output stage. Note that a drive having an internal power converter that operates from the high voltage supply will become operative.
- Do not short the motor leads at high motor speeds. When the motor is shorted, its own generated voltage may produce a current flow as high as 10 times the drive current. The short itself may not damage the drive but may damage the motor. If the connection arcs or opens while the motor is spinning rapidly, this high voltage pulse flows back into the drive (due to stored energy in the motor inductance) and may damage the drive.
- Do not make any connections to any internal circuitry. Only connections to designated connectors are allowed.
- Do not make any connections to the drive while power is applied.



Caution

- Do not reverse the power supply leads! Severe damage will result!
- If using relays or other means to disconnect the motor leads, be sure the drive is disabled before reconnecting the motor leads to the drive. Connecting the motor leads to the drive while it is enabled can generate extremely high voltage spikes which will damage the drive.



Caution

- Over current protective devices recognized by an international safety agency must be installed in line before the servo drive.
- These devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the installation instructions of the device and the power specifications of the servo drive.
- Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over current protection in the end user's equipment.



Caution

Use sufficient capacitance!

Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) drives require a capacitor on the high voltage supply to store energy during the PWM switching process. Insufficient power supply capacitance causes problems particularly with high inductance motors. During braking much of the stored mechanical energy is fed back into the power supply and charges its output capacitor to a higher voltage. If the charge reaches the drive's over-voltage shutdown point, output current and braking will cease. At that time energy stored in the motor inductance continues to flow through diodes in the drive to further charge the power supply capacitance. The voltage rise depends upon the power supply capacitance, motor speed, and inductance.



Caution

Make sure minimum inductance requirements are met!

Pulse Width modulation (PWM) servo drives deliver a pulsed output that requires a minimum amount of load inductance to ensure that the DC motor current is properly filtered. The minimum inductance values for different drive types are shown in the individual data sheet specifications. If the drive is operated below its maximum rated voltage, the minimum load inductance requirement may be reduced. Most servo-motors have enough winding inductance. Some types of motors (e.g. "basket-wound", "pancake", etc.) do not have a conventional iron core rotor, so the winding inductance is usually less than 50 μ H.

If the motor inductance value is less than the minimum required for the selected drive, use an external filter card.

2 Products and System Requirements

This document is intended as a guide and general overview in selecting, installing, and operating a PCB mount AxCent™ servo drive. Contained within are instructions on system integration, wiring, drive-setup, and standard operating methods.

2.1 Drive Family Overview

The family of PCB mount AxCent™ analog drives are designed to offer the same high performance and accuracy of larger drives, but in a space-saving PCB-mount architecture. By utilizing high density power devices, dual sided PCB boards, and creative design these drives are ideal for applications with limited size and weight constraints.

The PCB mount AxCent™ drive family contains drives that power both Single Phase (brushed) and Three Phase (brushless) motors. PCB mount AxCent™ drives are powered off a single unregulated DC power supply, and provide a variety of control and feedback options. The drives accept either a $\pm 10V$ analog signal or a PWM and Direction signal as input. A digital controller can be used to command and interact with these drives, and a number of input/output pins are available for parameter observation and drive configuration.

TABLE 2.1 Standard PCB Mount AxCent™ Drive Family Part Numbers

	Voltage Peak Current	10-40V	10-80V					40-175V	
		10A	6A	12A	20A	40A	60A	10A	25A
Three Phase (Brushless) and Single Phase (Brushed)	Current Mode Analog $\pm 10V$ Command	AZB10A4 AZB10A4IC	AZB6A8	AZB12A8	AZB20A8	AZB40A8	AZB60A8	AZB10A20	AZB25A20
	Current Mode PWM / Dir Command	AZBDC10A4	AZBDC6A8	AZBDC12A8	AZBDC20A8	AZBDC40A8	AZBDC60A8	AZBDC10A20	AZBDC25A20
	Hall Velocity Analog $\pm 10V$ Command	AZBH10A4 ¹	AZBH6A8	AZBH12A8	AZBH20A8	AZBH40A8	AZBH60A8	AZBH10A20	AZBH25A20
	Encoder Velocity Analog $\pm 10V$ Command	AZBE10A4	AZBE6A8	AZBE12A8	AZBE20A8	AZBE40A8	AZBE60A8	AZBE10A20	AZBE25A20
	Duty Cycle Mode Analog $\pm 10V$ Command	AZBD10A4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

1. Three phase (brushless) motors only

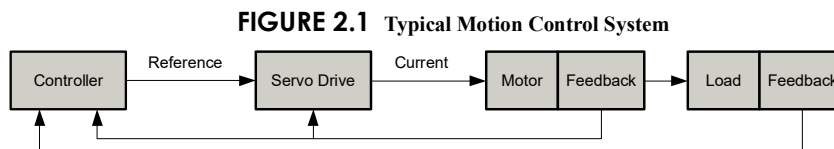
2.1.1 Drive Datasheet

Each drive has a separate datasheet that contains important information on the modes and product-specific features available with that particular drive. The datasheet is to be used in conjunction with this manual for system design and installation.

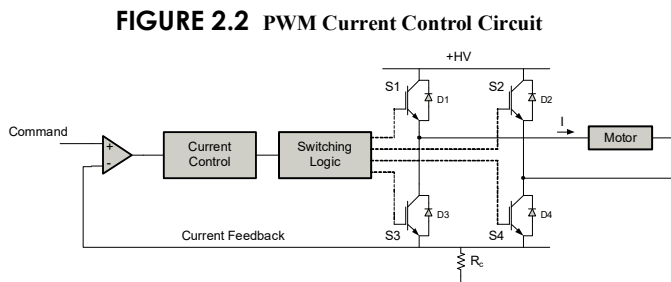
2.2 Analog PWM Servo Drive Basics and Theory

Analog servo drives are used extensively in motion control systems where precise control of position and/or velocity is required. The drive transmits the low-energy reference signals from the controller into high-energy signals (motor voltage and current). The reference signals can be either analog or digital, with a ± 10 VDC signal being the most common. The signal can represent either a motor torque or velocity demand.

Figure 2.1 shows the components typically used in a servo system (i.e. a feedback system used to control position, velocity, and/or acceleration). The controller contains the algorithms to close the desired servo loops and also handles machine interfacing (inputs/outputs, terminals, etc.). The drive represents the electronic power converter that drives the motor according to the controller reference signals. The motor (which can be of the brushed or brushless type, rotary, or linear) is the actual electromagnetic actuator, which generates the forces required to move the load. Feedback elements are mounted on the motor and/or load in order to close the servo loop.



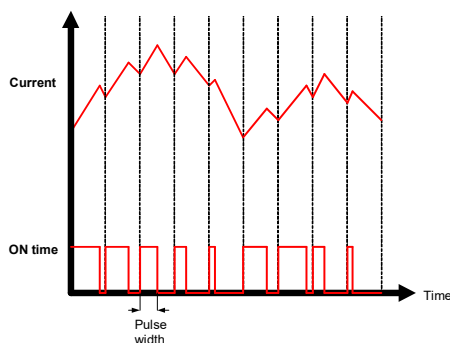
Although there exist many ways to "amplify" electrical signals, pulse width modulation (PWM) is by far the most efficient and cost-effective approach. At the basis of a PWM servo drive is a current control circuit that controls the output current by varying the duty cycle of the output power stage (fixed frequency, variable duty cycle). Figure 2.2 shows a typical setup for a single phase load.



S1, S2, S3, and S4 are power devices (MOSFET or IGBT) that can be switched on or off. D1, D2, D3, and D4 are diodes that guarantee current continuity. The bus voltage is depicted by +HV. The resistor R_c is used to measure the actual output current. For electric motors, the load is typically inductive due to the windings used to generate electromagnetic fields. The current can be regulated in both directions by activating the appropriate switches. When switch S1 and S4 (or S2 and S3) are activated, current will flow in the positive (or negative) direction and increase. When switch S1 is off and switch S4 is on (or S2 off and S3 on) current will flow in the positive (or negative) direction and decrease (via one of the diodes). The switch "ON" time is determined by the difference between the current demand and the actual current. The current control circuit will compare both signals every time interval (typically 50 μ sec or less) and activate the switches accordingly (this is done by the switching logic circuit, which

also performs basic protection functions). **Figure 2.3** shows the relationship between the pulse width (ON time) and the current pattern. The current rise time will depend on the bus voltage (+HV) and the load inductance. Therefore, certain minimum load inductance requirements are necessary depending on the bus voltage.

FIGURE 2.3 Output Current and Duty Cycle Relationship



2.2.1 Single Phase (Brushed) Motors

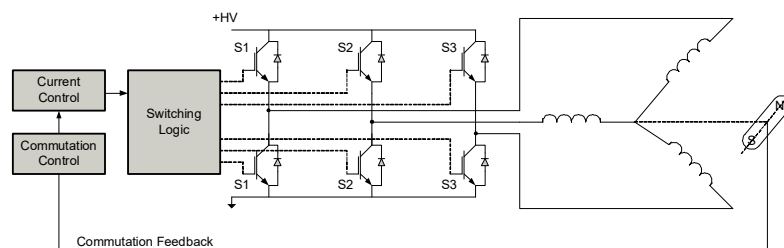
PCB mount AxCent servo drives can be used with permanent magnet brushed DC motors (PMDC motors). PMDC motors have a single winding (armature) on the rotor, and permanent magnets on the stator (no field winding). Brushes and commutators maintain the optimum torque angle. The torque generated by a PMDC motor is proportional to the current, giving it excellent dynamic control capabilities in motion control systems.

PCB mount AxCent drives can also be used to control current in other inductive loads such as voice coil actuators, magnetic bearings, etc.

2.2.2 Three Phase (Brushless) Motors

PCB mount AxCent servo drives are designed for use with brushless servo motors. These motors typically have a three-phase winding on the stator and permanent magnets on the rotor. Brushless motors require commutation feedback for proper operation (the commutators and brushes perform this function on brush type motors). This feedback consists of rotor magnetic field orientation information, supplied either by magnetic field sensors (Hall Effect sensors) or position sensors (encoder or resolver). Brushless motors have better power density ratings than brushed motors because heat is generated in the stator, resulting in a shorter thermal path to the outside environment. **Figure 2.4** shows a typical system configuration.

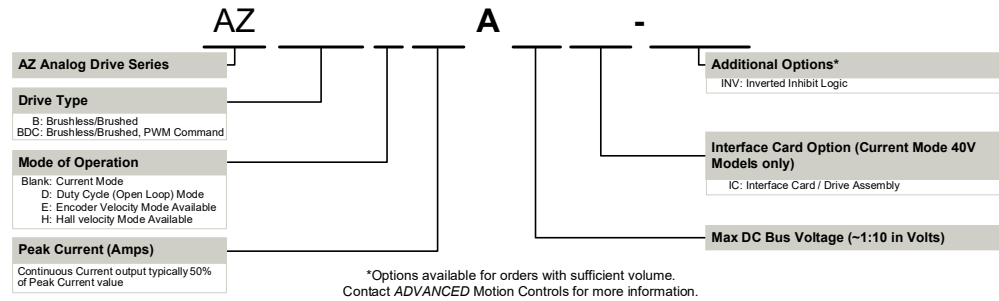
FIGURE 2.4 Brushless Servo System



2.3 Products Covered

The products covered in this manual adhere to the following part numbering structure. However, additional features and/or options are readily available for OEM's with sufficient ordering volume. Feel free to contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for further information.

FIGURE 2.5 PCB Mount AxCent™ Servo Drives Part Numbering Structure



In general, the PCB mount AxCent family of drives can be divided into top-level categories based on the peak current rating of the drive. These categories can be further separated into subdivisions based on specifications such as whether a drive uses analog or PWM input and the feedback available on the drive.

TABLE 2.2 Power Specifications

Description	Units	Power Specifications							
		AZ_10A4xx	AZ_6A8	AZ_12A8	AZ_20A8	AZ_40A8	AZ_60A8	AZ_10A20	AZ_25A20
DC Supply Voltage Range	VDC	10-36	20-80		10-80			40-175	
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	VDC	40	88					195	193
DC Bus Under Voltage Limit	VDC	8	18		9			36	
Maximum Peak Output Current	A	10	6	12	20	40	60	10	25
Maximum Continuous Output Current	A	5	3	6	12	20	30	6	12.5
Maximum Power Dissipation at Continuous Current	W	9	12	24	48	80	120	53	110
Minimum Load Inductance	μH	100	100			250			
Switching Frequency ¹	kHz	40	31			20.7			

1. Switching frequency for AZBE/AZBH_40A8 and AZBE/AZBH_60A8 drive models is 33 kHz. Switching frequency for AZBE/AZBH_10A20 and AZBE/AZBH_25A20 is 22 kHz.

TABLE 2.3 Control Specifications

Description	Control Specifications				
	AZB	AZBDC	AZBE ¹	AZBH ²	AZBD
Command Sources	± 10V Analog	PWM and Direction	± 10V Analog	± 10V Analog	± 10V Analog
Commutation Methods	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal
Control Modes	Current	Current	Current, Duty Cycle, Encoder Velocity, Tachometer Velocity	Current, Duty Cycle, Hall Velocity, Tachometer Velocity	Duty Cycle
Motors Supported	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase

1. AZBE10A4xx models operate solely in Encoder Velocity mode.
 2. AZBH10A4xx models operate solely in Hall Velocity mode, and support only three phase (brushless) motors.

2.4 Control Modes

The PCB mount AxCent family of drives offers a variety of different control methods. While some drives in the series are designed to operate solely in one mode, on other drives it is possible to select the control method by DIP switch settings. Consult the datasheet for the drive in use to see which modes are available for use.

The name of the mode refers to which servo loop is being closed in the drive, not the end-result of the application. For instance, a drive operating in Current (Torque) Mode may be used for a positioning application if the external controller is closing the position loop. Oftentimes, mode selection will be dependent on the requirements and capabilities of the controller being used with the drive as well as the end-result application.

2.4.1 Current (Torque)

In Current (Torque) Mode, the input command voltage controls the output current. The drive will adjust the output duty cycle to maintain the commanded output current. This mode is used to control torque for rotary motors (force for linear motors), but the motor speed is not controlled. The output current can be monitored through an analog current monitor output pin. The voltage value read at the “Current Monitor Output” can be multiplied by a scaling factor found on the drive datasheet to determine the actual output current. All PCB mount AxCent drives are able to operate in Current (Torque) Mode.



Note

While in Current (Torque) Mode, the drive will maintain a commanded torque output to the motor based on the input reference command. Sudden changes in the motor load may cause the drive to be outputting a high torque command with little load resistance, causing the motor to spin rapidly. Therefore, Current (Torque) Mode is recommended for applications using a digital position controller to maintain system stability.

2.4.2 Duty Cycle (Open Loop)

In Duty Cycle Mode, the input command voltage controls the output PWM duty cycle of the drive, indirectly controlling the output voltage. However, any fluctuations of the DC power supply voltage will affect the voltage output to the motor. This mode is available as a DIP switch selectable mode on AZBE and AZBH drives, and is the sole mode of operation on the AZBD10A4 model.



Note

This mode is recommended as a method of controlling the motor velocity when precise velocity control is not critical to the application, and when actual velocity feedback is unavailable.

2.4.3 Hall Velocity

In Hall Velocity Mode, the input command voltage controls the motor velocity, with the Hall Sensor frequency closing the velocity loop. An analog velocity monitor output allows observation of the actual motor speed through a Hz/V scaling factor found on the drive datasheet. The voltage value read at the velocity monitor output can be used to determine the motor RPM through the scaling factor. See [“Velocity Monitor Output” on page 51](#) for the motor RPM equation. This mode is available as a DIP switch selectable mode on AZBH drives, and is the sole mode of operation on the AZBH10A4 model.



Note

Due to the inherent low resolution of motor mounted Hall Sensors, Hall Velocity Mode is not recommended for low-speed applications below 300 rpm for a 6-pole motor, 600 rpm for a 4-pole motor, or 900 rpm for a 2-pole motor. Hall Velocity Mode is better suited for velocity control applications where the motor will be spinning at higher speeds.

2.4.4 Encoder Velocity

In Encoder Velocity Mode, the input command controls the motor velocity, with the frequency of the encoder pulses closing the velocity loop. An analog velocity monitor output allows observation of the actual motor speed through a kHz/V scaling factor found on the drive datasheet. The voltage value read at the velocity monitor output can be used to determine the motor RPM through the scaling factor. See [“Velocity Monitor Output” on page 51](#) for the motor RPM equation. This mode is available as a DIP switch selectable mode on AZBE drives.



Note

The high resolution of motor mounted encoders allows for excellent velocity control and smooth motion at all speeds. Encoder Velocity mode should be used for applications requiring precise and accurate velocity control, and is especially useful in applications where low-speed smoothness is the objective.

2.4.5 Tachometer Velocity

In Tachometer Velocity Mode, the input command voltage controls the motor velocity. This mode uses an external DC tachometer to close the velocity loop. The drive translates the DC voltage from the tachometer into motor speed and direction information. This mode is available as a DIP switch selectable mode on certain AZBE and AZBH drives.



Note

DC Tachometers have infinite resolution, allowing for extremely accurate velocity control. However, they also may be susceptible to electrical noise, most notably at low speeds.

2.5 Feedback Supported

There are a number of different feedback options available in the PCB mount AxCent family of drives. The feedback element can be any device capable of generating a voltage signal proportional to current, velocity, position, or any parameter of interest. Such signals can be provided directly by a potentiometer or indirectly by other feedback devices such as Hall Sensors or Encoders. These latter devices must have their signals converted to a DC voltage, a task performed by the drive circuitry.

TABLE 2.4 Feedback Supported

Description	Feedback Supported				
	AZB	AZBDC	AZBE	AZBH	AZBD
Hall Sensors for Commutation	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hall Sensors for Velocity Control				✓	
Single-Ended Incremental Encoder			✓		

2.5.1 Feedback Polarity

The feedback element must be connected for *negative* feedback. This will cause a difference between the command signal and the feedback signal, called the *error signal*. The drive compares the feedback signal to the command signal to produce the required output to the load by continually reducing the error signal to zero. For PCB mount AxCent drives, this becomes important when using “Encoder Feedback” and “Hall Sensors”, as connecting these feedback elements for positive feedback will lead to a motor “run-away” condition. In a case where the feedback lines are connected to the drive with the wrong polarity in either Hall Velocity or Encoder Velocity Mode, the drive will attempt to correct the “error signal” by applying more command to the motor. With the wrong feedback polarity, this will result in a positive feedback run-away condition. To correct this, either change the order that the feedback lines are connected to the drive, or change the DIP switch settings to reverse the internal feedback velocity polarity. See the drive datasheet for more information on DIP switch settings. Some drives may feature a removable jumper to reverse the velocity polarity.

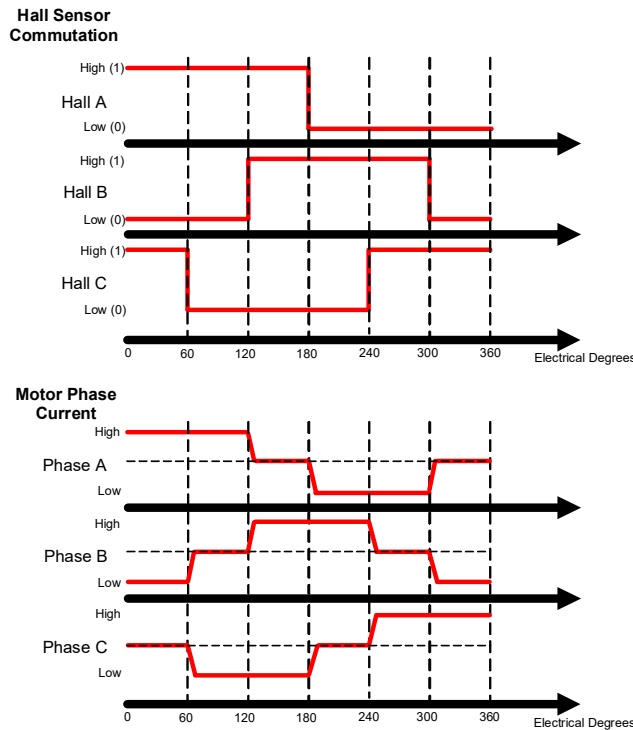
2.5.2 Hall Sensors

PCB mount AxCent drives use single-ended Hall Sensors for commutation feedback, and in the special case of the AZBH drives, for velocity control. The Hall Sensors (typically three) are built into the motor to detect the position of the rotor magnetic field. These sensors are mounted such that they each generate a square wave with 120-degree phase difference over one electrical cycle of the motor. Depending on the motor pole count, there may be more than one electrical cycle for every motor revolution. For every actual mechanical motor revolution, the number of electrical cycles will be the number of motor poles divided by two. For example:

- a 6-pole motor contains 3 electrical cycles per motor revolution
- a 4-pole motor contains 2 electrical cycles per motor revolution
- a 2-pole motor contains 1 electrical cycle per motor revolution

The drive powers two of the three motor phases with DC current during each specific Hall Sensor state:

FIGURE 2.6 Hall Sensor Commutation and Motor Phase Current for 120-Degree Phasing



Note: Not all **ADVANCED** Motion Controls' servo drive series use the same commutation logic. The commutation diagrams provided here should be used only with drives covered within this manual.

The table below shows the valid commutation states for both 120-degree and 60-degree phasing.

TABLE 2.5 Commutation Sequence Table

	60 Degree			120 Degree			Motor		
	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Phase A	Phase B	Phase C
Valid	1	0	0	1	0	0	HIGH	-	LOW
	1	1	0	1	1	0	-	HIGH	LOW
	1	1	1	0	1	0	LOW	HIGH	-
	0	1	1	0	1	1	LOW	-	HIGH
	0	0	1	0	0	1	-	LOW	HIGH
	0	0	0	1	0	1	HIGH	LOW	-
Invalid	1	0	1	1	1	1	-	-	-
	0	1	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

By default, PCB mount AxCent drives are always set to 120-degree phasing. However, certain drives feature either a surface-mount jumper (JE2) on the drive PCB that can be removed to manually set the drive to 60-degree phasing, or a DIP Switch that can configure the drive for 60-degree phasing.

Using a Single Phase Motor PCB mount AxCent drives are also compatible with Single Phase (Brushed) motors (AZBH10A4 excepted). However, because there are no Hall Sensors on a brushed motor, one of the following course of actions must be taken to properly commutate the drive:

- Remove the JE2 jumper to set the drive for 60-degree phasing . Leave all the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive open. These inputs are internally pulled high to +5V, creating a "1-1-

1" commutation state (see [Table 2.5](#) above) which is a valid state in 60-degree phasing. Connect only two of the motor output wires, Motor A and Motor B.

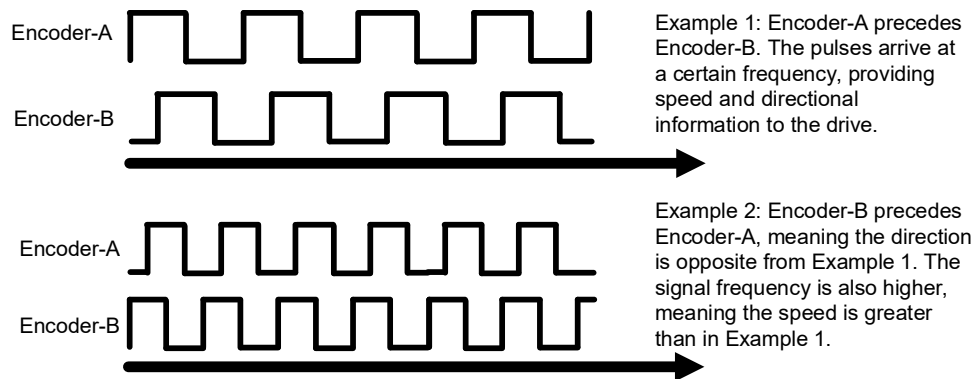
or:

- Tie one of the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive to signal ground. Since the Hall Sensor inputs are by default internally brought high to +5V, this will put the drive in a commutation state where two Hall inputs are high, and one is low (as shown in [Table 2.5](#), having all three Hall inputs pulled high is an invalid commutation state in 120-degree phasing). Depending on which Hall Sensor input is tied to ground, consult [Table 2.5](#) above to determine which two motor output wires will be conducting current for that specific commutation state.
- On AZB10A4IC drives, set DIP Switch 1 to ON (internally pulls Hall 2 to ground), and leave all the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive open. This creates a "1-0-1" commutation state, which is valid for 120-degree phasing. Connect only Motor A and Motor B.

2.5.3 Encoder Feedback

AZBE drives utilize two single-ended incremental encoder inputs for velocity control. The encoder provides incremental position feedback that can be extrapolated into very precise velocity information. The encoder signals are read as "pulses" that the drive uses to essentially keep track of the motor's position and direction of rotation. Based on the speed and order in which these pulses are received from the two encoder signals, the drive can interpret the motor velocity. The diagram below represents encoder "pulse" signals, showing how dependent on which signal is read first and at what frequency the "pulses" arrive, the speed and direction of the motor shaft can be extrapolated.

FIGURE 2.7 Encoder Feedback Signals



2.5.4 Tachometer Feedback

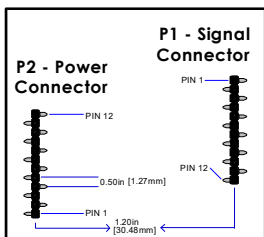
AZBE and most AZBH drives offer the option of using a DC Tachometer for velocity control. The tachometer provides an analog DC voltage feedback signal that is related to the actual motor speed and direction. The drive subsequently adjusts the output current based on the error between the tachometer feedback and the input command voltage. The maximum range of the tachometer feedback signal is ± 60 VDC.

2.6 Pin Layout

The diagrams below show the pin layout and location on PCB mount AxCent drives, as seen from the PCB where the drive is mounted. Note that some drives use a double row for the power header, and other drives have two power connectors. More detailed dimensional information can be found in “Physical Dimensions” on page 65 and in “Mating Connectors” on page 38.

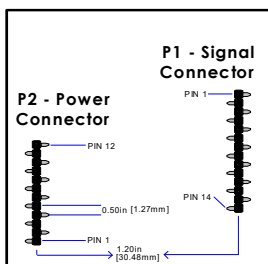
FIGURE 2.8 AZ-series Pin Layouts

AZB10A4 and AZBDC10A4 Drives

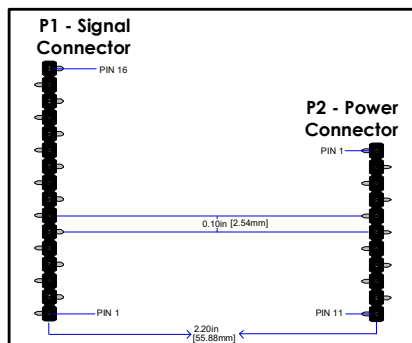


Note that P1 and P2 are identical 12-pin headers on AZB10A4 and AZBDC10A4 drive models. To avoid damage to the drive, be sure when plugging or soldering the drive into a PCB or interface card that the drive orientation is correct. P1 and P2 are labeled on the PCB silkscreen. Pin 7 on P2 is keyed (removed) to differentiate it from P1.

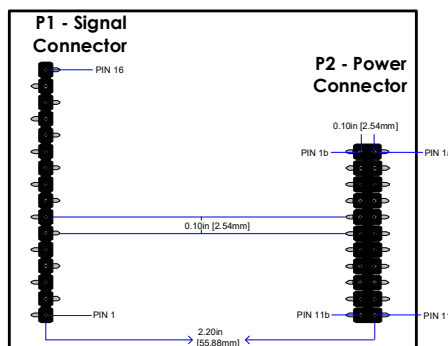
AZBE/D/H10A4 Drives



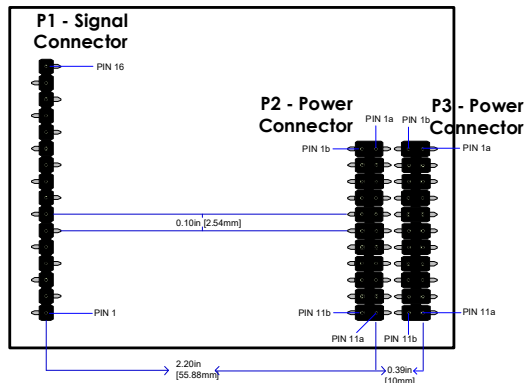
AZ_6A8 and AZ_12A8 Drives



AZ_10A20 and AZ_20A8 Drives



AZ_25A20, AZ_40A8, and AZ_60A8 Drives



2.7 Features and Control Specifications

2.7.1 AZB

- Designed to drive brushless/brushed motors with a ± 10 V analog input
- Current (Torque) Mode
- Hall Sensor trapezoidal Commutation

2.7.2 AZBDC

- Designed to drive brushless/brushed motors with a PWM input command
- Current (Torque) Mode
- Hall Sensor trapezoidal Commutation

2.7.3 AZBE

- Designed to drive brushless/brushed motors with a ± 10 V analog input
- DIP Switch selectable modes - Current (Torque), Duty Cycle, Encoder Velocity, Tachometer Velocity
- Hall Sensor trapezoidal commutation
- Single-ended incremental encoder feedback for velocity control
- External potentiometer input pin for command offset adjustment

2.7.4 AZBH

- Designed to drive brushless/brushed motors with a ± 10 V analog input
- DIP Switch selectable modes - Current (Torque), Duty Cycle, Hall Velocity, Tachometer Velocity
- Hall Sensor trapezoidal commutation
- Single-ended Hall Sensor feedback for velocity control
- External potentiometer input pin for command offset adjustment

2.7.5 Block Diagrams

FIGURE 2.9 AZB Drive Structure

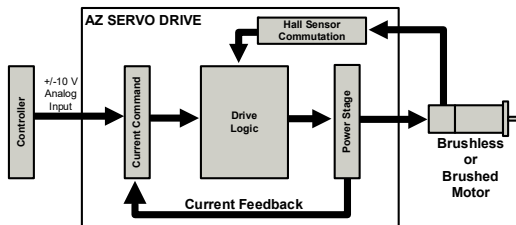


FIGURE 2.10 AZBDC Drive Structure

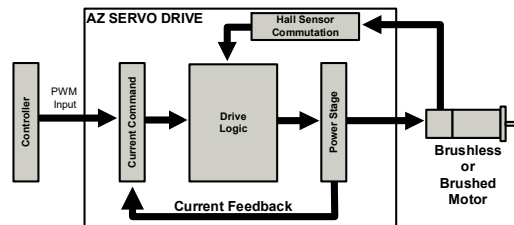


FIGURE 2.11 AZBE Drive Structure

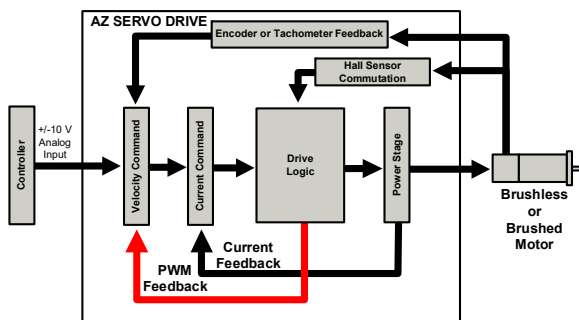
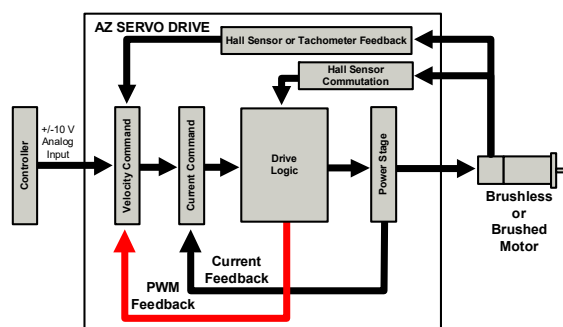


FIGURE 2.12 AZBH Drive Structure



2.7.6 Pinouts

TABLE 2.6 Signal Connectors

AZ_6A8, AZ_12A8, AZ_20A8, AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8, AZ_10A20, AZ_25A20				
P1	Analog Input	PWM Input	Analog Input Encoder Vel.	Analog Input Hall Vel.
Pin	Description	Description	Description	Description
1	+REF IN	PWM IN	+REF IN	+REF IN
2	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND
3	-REF IN	DIR IN	-REF IN	-REF IN
4	CURRENT MONITOR	CURRENT MONITOR	CURRENT MONITOR	CURRENT MONITOR
5	INHIBIT IN	INHIBIT IN	INHIBIT IN	INHIBIT IN
6	+V HALL OUT	+V HALL OUT	+V HALL OUT	+V HALL OUT
7	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND
8	HALL 1	HALL 1	HALL 1	HALL 1
9	HALL 2	HALL 2	HALL 2	HALL 2
10	HALL 3	HALL 3	HALL 3	HALL 3
11	CURRENT REF OUT	CURRENT REF OUT	CURRENT REF OUT	CURRENT REF OUT
12	FAULT OUT	FAULT OUT	FAULT OUT	FAULT OUT
13	RESERVED	RESERVED	ENCODER-B	RESERVED
14	RESERVED	RESERVED	ENCODER-A	RESERVED
15	RESERVED	RESERVED	VEL. MON. OUT or TACH IN	VEL. MON. OUT or TACH IN
16	RESERVED	RESERVED	OFFSET	+REF IN

AZ_10A4xx				
P1/P3	Analog Input	PWM Input	Encoder Velocity	Hall Velocity / Duty Cycle
Pin	Description	Description	Description	Description
1	-REF IN	DIR IN	ENCODER-B	RESERVED
2	+REF IN	PWM IN	ENCODER-A	RESERVED
3	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND	-REF IN	-REF IN
4	FAULT OUT	FAULT OUT	+REF IN	+REF IN
5	INHIBIT IN	INHIBIT IN	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND
6	CURRENT MONITOR	CURRENT MONITOR	FAULT OUT	FAULT OUT
7	HALL 3	HALL 3	INHIBIT IN	INHIBIT IN
8	HALL 2	HALL 2	CURRENT MONITOR	CURRENT MONITOR
9	HALL 1	HALL 1	HALL 3	HALL 3
10	+V HALL OUT	+V HALL OUT	HALL 2	HALL 2
11	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND	HALL 1	HALL 1
12	RESERVED	RESERVED	+V HALL OUT	+V HALL OUT
13	N/A	N/A	SIGNAL GND	SIGNAL GND
14	N/A	N/A	VEL. MON. OUT	VEL. MON. OUT

TABLE 2.7 Three Phase Power Connectors

AZ_6A8, AZ_12A8 - P2	
Pin	Description
1	HIGH VOLTAGE
2	
3	NC (KEY)
4	POWER GROUND
5	
6	MOTOR C
7	
8	MOTOR B
9	
10	MOTOR A
11	

AZ_20A8, AZ_10A20 - P2 AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8, AZ_25A20 - P2,P3		
Pin	Description	
1b	1a	HIGH VOLTAGE
2b	2a	
3b	3a	RESERVED (3b) NC - KEY (P2-3a)
4b	4a	POWER GROUND
5b	5a	
6b	6a	MOTOR C
7b	7a	
8a	8b	MOTOR B
9b	9a	
10b	10a	MOTOR A
11b	11a	

AZ_10A4 - P2	
Pin	Description
1	MOTOR A
2	
3	MOTOR B
4	
5	MOTOR C
6	
7	RESERVED
8	POWER GROUND
9	
10	HIGH VOLTAGE
11	
12	RESERVED

AZ_10A4IC - P7	
Pin	Description
1	POWER GROUND
2	
3	HIGH VOLTAGE
4	

AZ_10A4IC - P8	
Pin	Description
1	MOTOR A
2	
3	MOTOR B
4	
5	MOTOR C
6	
7	RESERVED
8	

2.8 System Requirements

To successfully incorporate a PCB mount AxCent servo drive into your system, you must be sure it will operate properly based on electrical, mechanical, and environmental specifications, follow some simple wiring guidelines, and perhaps make use of some accessories in anticipating impacts on performance. Before selecting a servo drive, a user should consider the requirements of their system. This involves calculating the required voltage, current, torque, and power requirements of the system, as well as considering the operating environment and any other equipment the drive will be interfacing with.



Note

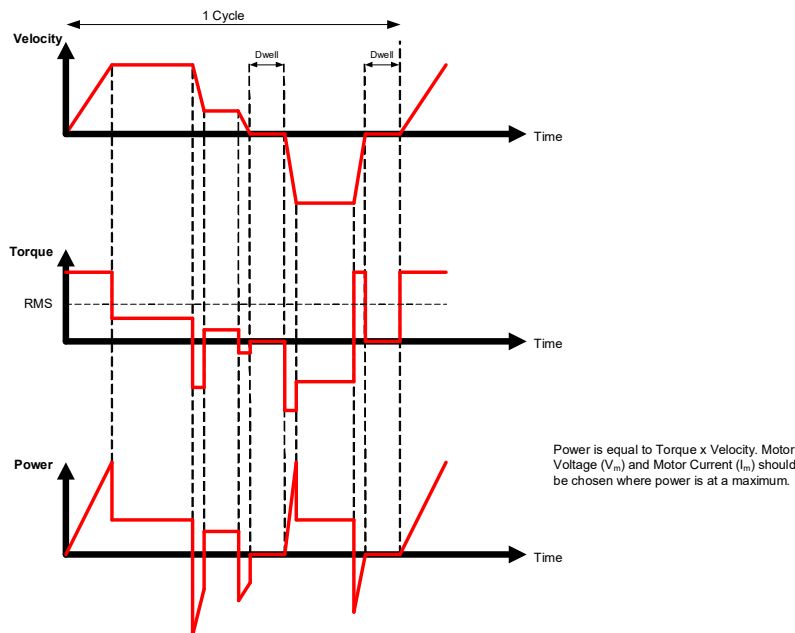
PCB mount AxCent servo drives are shipped with no other connectors or mounting components other than the signal and power header pins on the drive PCB itself. However, mounting cards and mating connectors are readily available. See ["Mounting Cards" on page 35](#) for the **ADVANCED** Motion Controls mounting cards. Customized mounting options are also available for orders with sufficient volume.

2.8.1 Analog Servo Drive Selection and Sizing

PCB mount AxCent servo drives have a given current and voltage rating unique to each drive. Based on the necessary application requirements and the information from the datasheet of the motor being used, a drive may be selected that will best suit the motor capabilities. A drive should be selected that will meet the peak and continuous current requirements of the application, and operate within the voltage requirements of the system.

Motor Current and Voltage Motor voltage and current requirements are determined based on the maximum required torque and velocity. These requirements can be derived from the application move profiles ([Figure 2.13](#)).

FIGURE 2.13 Example Velocity, Torque, and Power Curves



The **motor current** I_M is the required motor current in amps DC, and is related to the torque needed to move the load by the following equation:

$$I_M = \frac{\text{Torque}}{K_T}$$

Where:

K_T -motor torque constant

The motor current will need to be calculated for both continuous and peak operation. The peak torque will be during the acceleration portion of the move profile.

The continuous torque is the average torque required by the system during the move profile, including dwell times. Both peak torque and continuous, or RMS (root mean square) torque need to be calculated. RMS torque can be calculated by plotting torque versus time for one move cycle.

$$T_{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_i T_i^2 t_i}{\sum_i t_i}}$$

Here T_i is the torque and t_i is the time during segment i . In the case of a vertical application make sure to include the torque required to overcome gravity.

The system voltage requirement is based on the motor properties and how fast and hard the motor is driven. The system voltage requirement is equal to the **motor voltage**, V_M , required to achieve the move profile. In general, the motor voltage is proportional to the motor speed and the motor current is proportional to the motor shaft torque. Linear motors exhibit the same behavior except that in their case force is proportional to current. These relationships are described by the following equations:

$$V_m = I_m R_m + E$$

$$E = K_e S_m$$

for rotary motors $T = K_t I_m$

for linear motors $F = K_f I_m$

Where:

V_m	-motor voltage
I_m	-motor current (use the maximum current expected for the application)
R_m	-motor line-to-line resistance
E	-motor back-EMF voltage
T	-motor torque
F	-motor force
K_t	-motor torque constant
K_f	-motor force constant
K_e	-voltage constant
S_m	-motor speed (use the maximum speed expected for the application)

The motor manufacturer's data sheet contain K_t (or K_f) and K_e constants. Pay special attention to the units used (metric vs. English) and the amplitude specifications (peak-to-peak vs. RMS, phase-to-phase vs. phase-to-neutral).

The maximum motor terminal voltage and current can be calculated from the above equations. For example, a motor with a $K_e = 10V/Krpm$ and required speed of 3000 RPM would require 30V to operate. In this calculation the IR term (voltage drop across motor winding resistance) is disregarded. Maximum current is maximum torque divided by K_t . For example, a motor with $K_t = 0.5 Nm/A$ and maximum torque of 5 Nm would require 10 amps of current. Continuous current is RMS torque divided by K_t .

Motor Inductance The motor inductance is vital to the operation of servo drives, as it ensures that the DC motor current is properly filtered.



Caution

A motor that does not meet the rated minimum inductance value of the drive may damage the drive! If the motor inductance value is less than the minimum required for the selected drive, use of an external filter card is necessary. See "[Inductive Filter Cards](#)" on page 30 for more information.

A minimum motor inductance rating for each specific drive can be found in the drive datasheet. If the drive is operated below the maximum rated voltage, the minimum load inductance requirement may be reduced.

In the above equations the motor inductance is neglected. In brushless systems the voltage drop caused by the motor inductance can be significant. This is the case in high-speed applications if motors with high inductance and high pole count are used. Please use the following equation to determine motor terminal voltage (must be interpreted as a vector).

$$V_m = (R_m + j\omega L)I_m + E$$

Where:

L	-phase-to-phase motor inductance
ω	-maximum motor current frequency

2.8.2 Power Supply Selection and Sizing

There are several factors to consider when selecting a power supply for a PCB mount AxCent servo drive.

- Power Requirements
- Isolation
- Regeneration
- Voltage Ripple

Power Requirements refers to how much voltage and current will be required by the drive in the system. Isolation refers to whether the power supply needs an isolation transformer. Regeneration is the energy the power supply needs to absorb during deceleration. Voltage Ripple is the voltage fluctuation inherent in unregulated supplies.

Power Supply Current and Voltage The power supply current rating is based on the maximum current that will be required by the system. If the power supply powers more than one drive, then the current requirements for each drive should be added together. Due to the nature of servo drives, the current into the drive does not always equal the current out of the drive. However, the power in is equal to the power out. Use the following equation to calculate the power supply output current, I_{PS} , based on the motor voltage and current requirements.

$$I_{PS} = \frac{V_M \cdot I_M}{V_{PS} \cdot (0.98)}$$

Where:

V_{PS}	-nominal power supply voltage
I_M	-motor current
V_M	-motor voltage

Use values of V_m and I_m at the point of maximum power in the move profile, [Figure 2.13](#) (when $V_M I_M = \max$). This will usually be at the end of a hard acceleration when both the torque and speed of the motor is high.

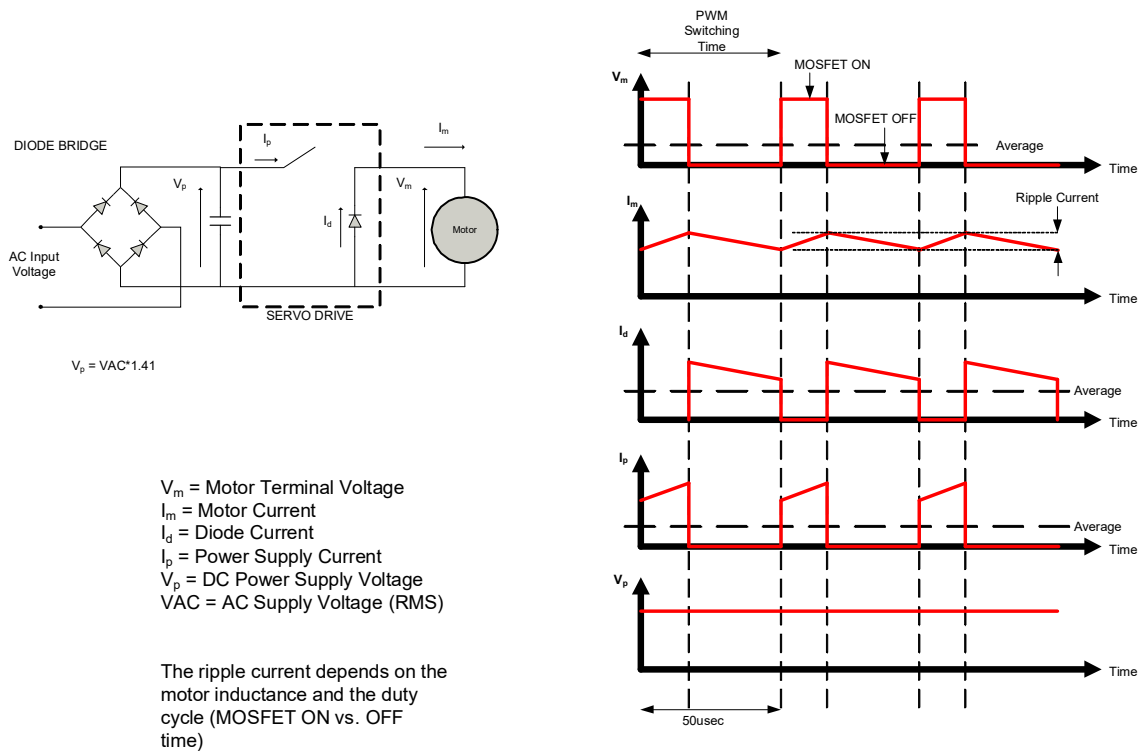
The power supply current is a pulsed DC current ([Figure 2.14](#)): when the MOSFET switch is on, it equals the motor current; when the MOSFET is off it is zero. Therefore, the power supply current is a function of the PWM duty cycle and the motor current (e.g. 30% duty cycle and 12 amps motor current will result in 4 amps power supply current). 30% duty cycle also means that the average motor voltage is 30% of the DC bus voltage. Power supply power is approximately equal to drive output power plus 3 to 5%.



Caution

The only time the power supply current needs to be as high as the drive output current is if the move profile requires maximum current at maximum velocity. In many cases however, maximum current is only required at start up and lower currents are required at higher speeds.

FIGURE 2.14 Unregulated DC Power Supply Current



A system will need a certain amount of voltage and current to operate properly. If the power supply has too little voltage/current the system will not perform adequately. If the power supply has too much voltage the drive may shut down due to over voltage, or the drive may be damaged.

To avoid nuisance over- or under-voltage errors caused by fluctuations in the power supply, the ideal system power supply voltage should be at least 10% above the entire system voltage requirement, and at least 10% below the lowest value of the following:

- Drive over voltage
- External shunt regulator turn-on voltage (see [“Regeneration and Shunt Regulators”](#) on page 21)

These percentages also account for the variances in K_t and K_e , and losses in the system external to the drive. The selected margin depends on the system parameter variations.

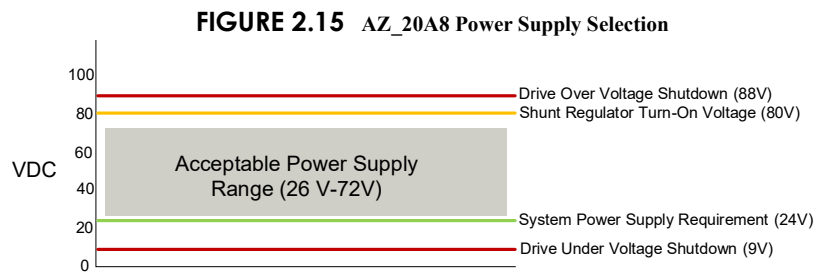


Caution

Do not select a supply voltage that could cause a mechanical over-speed in the event of a drive malfunction or a runaway condition.

Brushed Motors may have voltage limitations due to the mechanical commutators. Consult the manufacturer's data sheets.

PCB mount AxCent servo drives operate off an isolated unregulated DC Power Supply (see [Table 2.2](#) for drive model power supply ranges and over-voltage shutdown values). [Figure 2.15](#) provides one possible example of an appropriate system power supply voltage for an AZ_20A8 drive using an external shunt regulator. The shunt regulator turn-on voltage was chosen at an appropriate level to clamp the power supply voltage so it will not exceed the drive over voltage limit during regeneration. The system power supply requirement is based on the motor properties and how much voltage is needed to achieve the application move profile (see [“Motor Current and Voltage”](#) on page 16). Keep in mind that the calculated value for V_m is the minimum voltage required to complete moves at the desired speed and torque. There should be at least 10% headroom between the calculated value and the actual power supply voltage to allow for machine changes such as increased friction due to wear, change in load, increased operating speed, etc.



Isolation In systems where an AC line is involved, isolation is required between the AC line and the signal pins on the drive. This applies to all systems except those that use a battery as a power supply. There are two options for isolation:

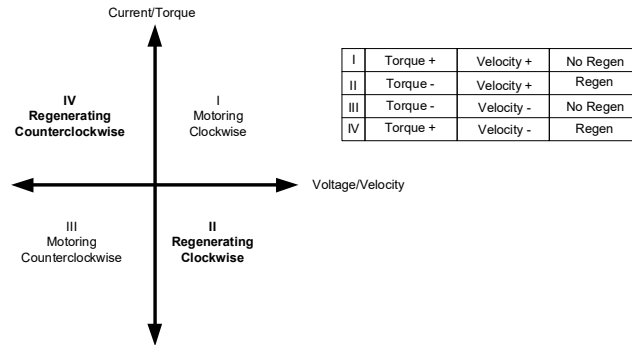
1. The drive can have built in electrical isolation.
2. The power supply can provide isolation (e.g. a battery or an isolation transformer).

The system must have at least one of these options to operate safely.

Power Supply with Isolation

An isolated power supply is either a battery or a power supply that uses an isolation transformer to isolate the AC line voltage from the power supply ground. This allows both the power ground on an isolated power supply and the signal ground on a non-isolated drive to be safely pulled to earth ground. Always use an isolated power supply if there is no isolation in the drive.

Regeneration and Shunt Regulators Use of a shunt regulator is necessary in systems where motor deceleration or a downward motion of the motor load will cause the system's mechanical energy to be regenerated via the drive back onto the power supply.

FIGURE 2.16 Four Quadrant Operation - Regeneration occurs when Torque and Velocity polarity are opposite


This regenerated energy can charge the power supply capacitors to levels above that of the drive over-voltage shutdown level. If the power supply capacitance is unable to handle this excess energy, or if it is impractical to supply enough capacitance, then an external shunt regulator must be used to dissipate the regenerated energy. Shunt regulators are essentially a resistor placed in parallel with the DC bus. The shunt regulator will "turn-on" at a certain voltage level (set below the drive over-voltage shutdown level) and discharge the regenerated electric energy in the form of heat.

The voltage rise on the power supply capacitors without a shunt regulator, can be calculated according to a simple energy balance equation. The amount of energy transferred to the power supply can be determined through:

$$E_i = E_f$$

Where:

E_i -initial energy
 E_f -final energy

These energy terms can be broken down into the approximate mechanical and electrical terms - capacitive, kinetic, and potential energy. The energy equations for these individual components are as follows:

$$E_c = \frac{1}{2}CV_{nom}^2$$

Where:

E_c -energy stored in a capacitor (joules)
 C -capacitance
 V_{nom} -nominal bus voltage of the system

$$E_r = \frac{1}{2}J\omega^2$$

Where:

E_r	-kinetic (mechanical) energy of the load (joules)
J	-inertia of the load (kg-m ²)
ω	-angular velocity of the load (rads/s)

$$E_p = mgh$$

Where:

E_p	-potential mechanical energy (joules)
m	-mass of the load (kg)
g	-gravitational acceleration (9.81 m/s ²)
h	-vertical height of the load (meters)

During regeneration the kinetic and potential energy will be stored in the power supply's capacitor. To determine the final power supply voltage following a regenerative event, the following equation may be used for most requirements:

$$(E_c \cdot E_r \cdot E_p)_i = (E_c \cdot E_r \cdot E_p)_f$$

$$\frac{1}{2}CV_{nom}^2 + \frac{1}{2}J\omega_i^2 + mgh_i = \frac{1}{2}CV_f^2 + \frac{1}{2}J\omega_f^2 + mgh_f$$

Which simplifies to:

$$V_f = \sqrt{V_{nom}^2 + \frac{J}{C}(\omega_i^2 - \omega_f^2) + \frac{2mg(h_i - h_f)}{C}}$$

The V_f calculated must be below the power supply capacitance voltage rating and the drive over voltage limit. If this is not the case, a shunt regulator is necessary. A shunt regulator is sized in the same way as a motor or drive, i.e. continuous and RMS power dissipation must be determined. The power dissipation requirements can be determined from the application move profile (see [Figure 2.13](#)).

ADVANCED Motion Controls offers a variety of shunt regulators for servo drives. When choosing a shunt regulator, select one with a shunt voltage that is greater than the DC bus voltage of the application but less than the over voltage shutdown of the drive. Verify the need

for a shunt regulator by operating the servo drive under the worst-case braking and deceleration conditions. If the drive shuts off due to over-voltage, a shunt regulator is necessary.

Continuous Regeneration

In the special case where an application requires continuous regeneration (more than a few seconds) then a shunt regulator may not be sufficient to dissipate the regenerative energy. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for possible solutions to solve this kind of application. Some examples:

- Web tensioning device
- Electric vehicle rolling down a long hill
- Spinning mass with a very large inertia (grinding wheel, flywheel, centrifuge)
- Heavy lift gantry

Voltage Ripple For the most part, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls PCB mount AxCent servo drives are unaffected by voltage ripple from the power supply. The current loop is fast enough to compensate for 60 Hz fluctuations in the bus voltage, and the components in the drive are robust enough to withstand all but the most extreme cases. Peak to peak voltage ripple as high as 25 V is acceptable.

There are some applications where the voltage ripple can cause unacceptable performance. This can become apparent where constant torque or force is critical or when the bus voltage is pulled low during high speed and high current applications. If necessary, the voltage ripple from the power supply can be reduced, either by switching from single phase AC to three phase AC, or by increasing the capacitance of the power supply.

The voltage ripple for a system can be estimated using the equation:

$$V_R = \frac{I_{PS}}{C_{PS}} F_f$$

Where:

V_R	-voltage ripple
C_{PS}	-power supply capacitance
I_{PS}	-power supply output current
F_f	-frequency factor (1/hertz)

The power supply capacitance can be estimated by rearranging the above equation to solve for the capacitance as:

$$C_{PS} = \frac{I_{PS}}{V_R} F_f$$

The frequency factor can be determined from:

$$F_f = \frac{0.42}{f}$$

where f is the AC line frequency in hertz. Note that for half wave rectified power supplies, $f = f/2$.

The power supply output current, if unknown, can be estimated by using information from the output side of the servo drive as given below:

$$I_{PS} = \frac{V_M \cdot I_M}{V_{PS} \cdot (0.98)}$$

Where:

- I_M -current through the motor
- V_{PS} -nominal power supply voltage
- V_M -motor voltage (see “[Motor Current and Voltage](#)” on page 16)

2.8.3 Environment

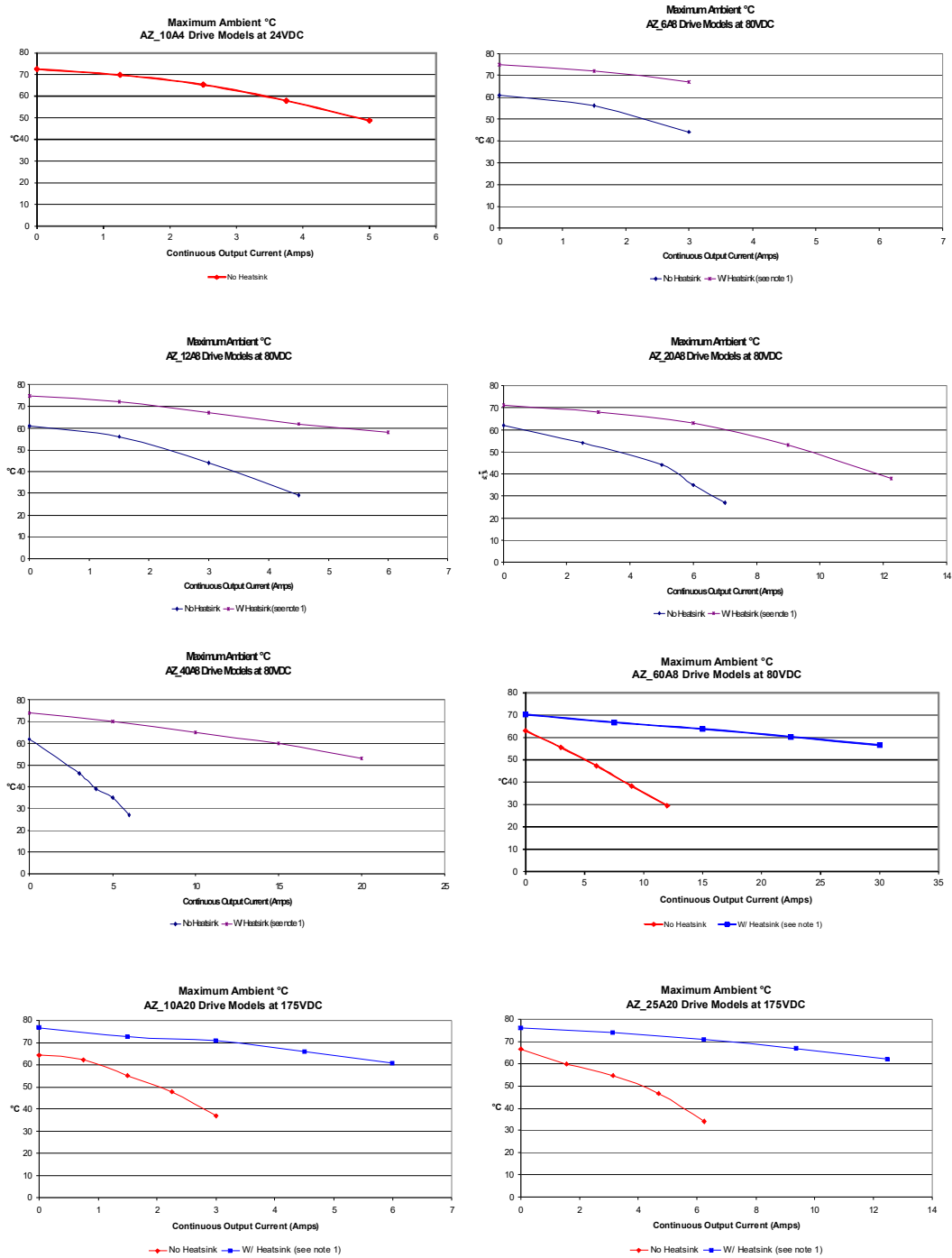
To ensure proper operation of a PCB mount AxCent servo drive, it is important to evaluate the operating environment prior to installing the drive.

TABLE 2.8 Environmental Specifications

Environmental Specifications	
Parameter	Description
Ambient Temperature Range	See Figure 2.17
Baseplate Temperature Range	See drive datasheet
Humidity	90%, non-condensing
Mechanical Shock	10g, 11ms, Half-sine
Vibration	2 - 2000 Hz @ 2.5g
Altitude	0-3000m

Ambient Temperature Range and Thermal Data PCB mount AxCent drives contain a built-in over-temperature disabling feature if the baseplate temperature rises above a certain value. For a specific continuous output current, the graphs below specify an upper limit to the ambient temperature range PCB mount AxCent drives can operate within while keeping the baseplate temperature below the over-temperature value. It is recommended to mount the baseplate of the drive to a heatsink for best thermal management results. For mounting instructions and diagrams see “[Mounting](#)” on page 35.

FIGURE 2.17 PCB Mount AxCent Servo Drives Ambient Temperature Ranges



1. The heatsink used in the above tests is a 15" x 22" x 0.65" aluminum plate.

Shock/Vibrations While PCB mount AxCent drives are designed to withstand a high degree of mechanical shock and vibration, too much physical abuse can cause erratic behavior, or cause the drive to cease operation entirely. Be sure the drive is securely mounted in the system to reduce the shock and vibration the drive will be exposed to. The best way to secure the drive against mechanical vibration is to use screws to mount the drive against its baseplate. For information on mounting options and procedures, see [“Mounting” on page 35](#).



Caution

Care should be taken to ensure the drive is securely mounted in a location where no moving parts will come in contact with the drive.

3

Integration in the Servo System

This chapter will give various details on incorporating a PCB mount AxCent servo drive into a system, such as how to design the PCB traces on an interface board, how to properly ground both the drive along with the entire system, and how to properly connect motor wires, power supply wires, feedback wires, and inputs to the drive.

3.1 LVD Requirements

The servo drives covered in the LVD Reference report were investigated as components intended to be installed in complete systems that meet the requirements of the Machinery Directive. In order for these units to be acceptable in the end users' equipment, the following conditions of acceptability must be met.

1. European approved overload and current protection must be provided for the motors as specified in section 7.2 and 7.3 of EN60204.1.
2. A disconnect switch shall be installed in the final system as specified in section 5.3 of EN60204.1.
3. All drives that do not have a grounding terminal must be installed in, and conductively connected to a grounded end use enclosure in order to comply with the accessibility requirements of section 6, and to establish grounding continuity for the system in accordance with section 8 of EN60204.1.
4. A disconnecting device that will prevent the unexpected start-up of a machine shall be provided if the machine could cause injury to persons. This device shall prevent the automatic restarting of the machine after any failure condition shuts the machine down.
5. European approved over current protective devices must be installed in line before the servo drive, these devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the installation instructions (the installation instructions shall specify an over current rating value as low as possible, but taking into consideration inrush currents, etc.). Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over protection in the end users' equipment.

These items should be included in your declaration of incorporation as well as the name and address of your company, description of the equipment, a statement that the servo drives must not be put into service until the machinery into which they are incorporated has been declared in conformity with the provisions of the Machinery Directive, and identification of the person signing.

3.2 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements

The following sections contain installation instructions necessary for meeting EMC requirements.

Contact the factory for assistance in determining the type of drive in use.

General

1. Shielded cables must be used for all interconnect cables to the drive and the shield of the cable must be grounded at the closest ground point with the least amount of resistance.
2. The drive's metal enclosure must be grounded to the closest ground point with the least amount of resistance.
3. The drive must be mounted in such a manner that the connectors and exposed printed circuit board are not accessible to be touched by personnel when the product is in operation. If this is unavoidable there must be clear instructions that the amplifier is not to be touched during operation. This is to avoid possible malfunction due to electrostatic discharge from personnel.

Analog Input Drives

4. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted to the low level signal interconnect cables to prevent pickup from external RF fields.

PWM Input Drives

5. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted to the PWM input cable to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

MOSFET Switching Drives

6. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted at the load cable connector to reduce electromagnetic emissions.
7. An appropriately rated Cosel TAC series AC power filter in combination with a Fair Rite model 5977002701 torroid (placed on the supply end of the filter) must be fitted to the AC supply to any MOSFET drive system in order to reduce conducted emissions fed back into the supply network.

IGBT Switching Drives

8. An appropriately rated Cosel TAC series AC power filter in combination with a Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core (placed on the supply end of the filter) must be fitted to the AC supply to any IGBT drive system in order to reduce conducted emissions fed back into the supply network.
9. A Fair Rite model 0443164151 round suppression core and model 5977003801 torroid must be fitted at the load cable connector to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

Fitting of AC Power Filters

It is possible for noise generated by the machine to "leak" onto the main AC power, and then get distributed to nearby equipment. If this equipment is sensitive, it may be adversely

affected by the noise. AC power filters can filter this noise and keep it from getting on the AC power signal. The above mentioned AC power filters should be mounted flat against the enclosure of the product using the mounting lugs provided on the filter. Paint should be removed from the enclosure where the filter is fitted to ensure good metal to metal contact. The filter should be mounted as close to the point where the AC power filter enters the enclosure as possible. Also, the AC power cable on the load end of the filter should be routed far from the AC power cable on the supply end of the filter and all other cables and circuitry to minimize RF coupling.

3.2.1 Ferrite Suppression Core Set-up

If PWM switching noise couples onto the feedback signals or onto the signal ground, then a ferrite suppression core can be used to attenuate the noise. Take the motor leads and wrap them around the suppression core as many times as reasonable possible, usually 2-5 times. Make sure to strip back the cable shield and only wrap the motor wires. There will be two wires for single phased (brushed) motors and 3 wires for three phase (brushless) motors. Wrap the motor wires together as a group around the suppression core and leave the motor case ground wire out of the loop. The suppression core should be located as near to the drive as possible. TDK ZCAT series snap-on filters are recommended for reducing radiated emissions on all I/O cables.

3.2.2 Inductive Filter Cards

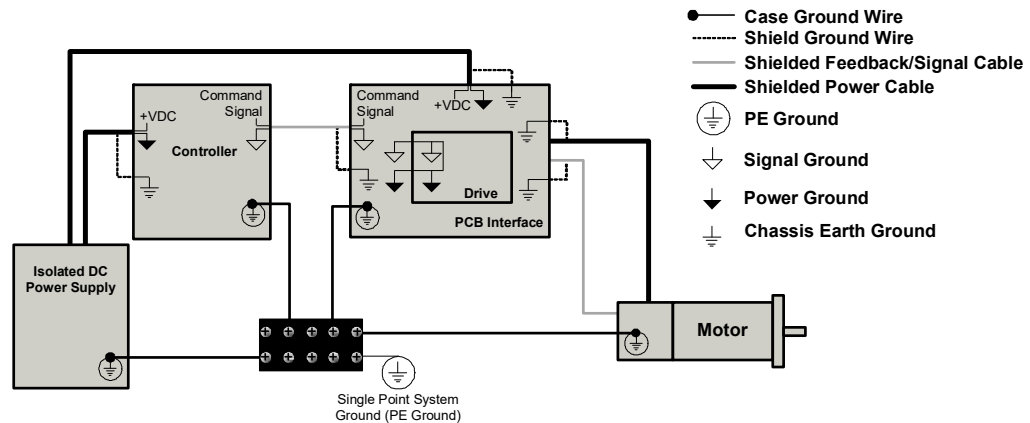
Inductive filter cards are added in series with the motor and are used to increase the load inductance in order to meet the minimum load inductance requirement of the drive. They also serve to counteract the effects of line capacitance found in long cable runs and in high voltage systems. These filter cards also have the added benefit of reducing the amount of PWM noise that couples onto the signal lines.

3.3 Grounding

In most servo systems all the case grounds should be connected to a single Protective Earth (PE) ground point in a "star" configuration. Grounding the case grounds at a central PE ground point reduces the chance for ground loops and helps to minimize high frequency voltage differentials between components. All ground wires must be of a heavy gauge and be as short as possible. The following should be securely grounded at the central PE grounding point:

- Motor chassis
- Controller chassis
- Power supply chassis
- PCB Interface chassis

FIGURE 3.1 System Grounding



Ground cable shield wires at the mounting card or PCB interface side to a chassis earth ground point.

The DC power ground and the input reference command signal ground are oftentimes at a different potential than chassis/PE ground. The signal ground of the controller must be connected to the signal ground of the drive to avoid picking up noise due to the "floating" differential servo drive input. On all drives, the DC power ground and the input command signal ground are referenced to each other internally. In systems using an isolated DC power supply, signal ground and/or power ground can be referenced to chassis ground. First decide if this is both appropriate and safe. If this is the case, they can be grounded at the central grounding point.



Warning

Grounding is important for safety. The grounding recommendations in this manual may not be appropriate for all applications and system machinery. It is the responsibility of the system designer to follow applicable regulations and guidelines as they apply to the specific servo system.

3.4 Wiring

Servo system wiring typically involves wiring a controller (digital or analog), a servo drive, a power supply, and a motor. Wiring these servo system components is fairly easy when a few simple rules are observed.

As with any high efficiency PWM servo drive, the possibility of noise and interference coupling through the cabling and wires can be harmful to overall system performance. Noise in the form of interfering signals can be coupled:

- Capacitively (electrostatic coupling) onto signal wires in the circuit (the effect is more serious for high impedance points).
- Magnetically to closed loops in the signal circuit (independent of impedance levels).
- Electromagnetically to signal wires acting as small antennas for electromagnetic radiation.

- From one part of the circuit to other parts through voltage drops on ground lines.

Experience shows that the main source of noise is the high DV/DT (typically about 1V/nanosecond) of the drive's output power stage. This PWM output can couple back to the signal lines through the output and input wires. The best methods to reduce this effect are to move signal and motor leads apart, add shielding, and use differential inputs at the drive. For extreme cases, use of an inductive filter card is recommended.

Unfortunately, low-frequency magnetic fields are not significantly reduced by metal enclosures. Typical sources are 50 or 60 Hz power transformers and low frequency current changes in the motor leads. Avoid large loop areas in signal, power-supply, and motor wires. Twisted pairs of wires are quite effective in reducing magnetic pick-up because the enclosed area is small, and the signals induced in successive twist cancel.

3.4.1 Wire Gauge

As the wire diameter decreases, the impedance increases. Higher impedance wire will broadcast more noise than lower impedance wire. Therefore, when selecting the wire gauge for the motor power wires, power supply wires, and ground wires, it is better to err on the side of being too thick rather than too thin. This recommendation becomes more critical as the cable length increases.

3.4.2 Motor Wires

The motor power wires supply power from the drive to the motor. Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the motor power cables is recommended to reduce the amount of noise coupling to sensitive components.

- For a brushed motor or voice coil, twist the two motor wires together as a group.
- For a brushless motor, twist all three motor wires together as a group.

Ground the motor power cable shield at one end only to the mounting card or PCB interface chassis ground. The motor power leads should be bundled and shielded in their own cable and kept separate from feedback signal wires.



Caution

DO NOT use wire shield to carry motor current or power!

3.4.3 Power Supply Wires

The PWM current spikes generated by the power output-stage are supplied by the internal power supply capacitors. In order to keep the current ripple on these capacitors to an acceptable level it is necessary to use heavy power supply leads and keep them as short as possible. Reduce the inductance of the power leads by twisting them. Ground the power supply cable shield at one end only to the mounting card or PCB interface chassis ground.

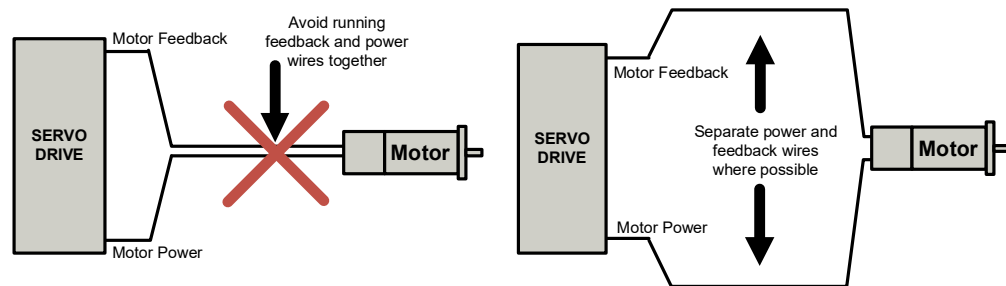
When multiple drives are installed in a single application, precaution regarding ground loops must be taken. Whenever there are two or more possible current paths to a ground connection, damage can occur or noise can be introduced in the system. The following rules apply to all multiple axis installations, regardless of the number of power supplies used:

1. Run separate power supply leads to each drive directly from the power supply filter capacitor.
2. Never "daisy-chain" any power or DC common connections. Use a "star"-connection instead.

3.4.4 Feedback Wires

Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the feedback wires is recommended. Ground the shield at one end only to the mounting card or PCB interface chassis ground. Route cables and/or wires to minimize their length and exposure to noise sources. The motor power wires are a major source of noise, and the motor feedback wires are susceptible to receiving noise. This is why it is never a good idea to route the motor power wires with the motor feedback wires, even if they are shielded. Although both of these cables originate at the drive and terminate at the motor, try to find separate paths that maintain distance between the two. A rule of thumb for the minimum distance between these wires is 10cm for every 10m of cable length.

FIGURE 3.2 Feedback Wiring



3.4.5 Input Reference Wires

Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the input reference wires is recommended. Connect the reference source "+" to "+REF IN", and the reference source "-" (or common) to "-REF IN". Connect the shield to the mounting card or PCB interface chassis ground. The servo drive's reference input circuit will attenuate the common mode voltage between signal source and drive power grounds. In case of a single-ended reference signal, connect the command signal to +REF IN and connect the command return and -REF IN to signal ground.



Note

If you are using a PCB mount AxCent drive to replace an *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' panel mount drive, the same command input to the ±REF IN input pins on the PCB mount drive will result in the motor spinning in the opposite direction as with the panel mount drive. This can be changed by swapping the command input wiring (+REF IN to Pin 3 (Pin 2 for AZ_10A4 models) instead of Pin 1, and -REF IN to Pin 1 instead of Pin 3).

Long signal wires (10-15 feet and up) can also be a source of noise when driven from a typical OP-AMP output. Due to the inductance and capacitance of the wire the OP-AMP can oscillate.

It is always recommended to set a fixed voltage at the controller and then check the signal at the drive with an oscilloscope to make sure that the signal is noise free.

3.5 Mounting

This section provides information on the different ways to mount a drive to a PCB board.

3.5.1 Mounting Cards

Mounting cards are available to interface directly with certain PCB mount AxCent drives.

TABLE 3.1 Mounting Card Drive Compatibility

Mounting Card	Compatible Drive Models	Connector Type
MC1XAZ01	AZ_6A8, AZ_12A8, AZ_20A8, AZ_10A20, AZ_25A20	Vertical-Entry Quick-Disconnect
MC1XAZ01-HR	AZ_6A8, AZ_12A8, AZ_20A8, AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8 [†] , AZ_10A20, AZ_25A20	Side-Entry (Quick-Disconnect I/O, Fixed Screw Terminal Motor/Power)
MC1XAZ02	AZB10A4, AZBDC10A4, AZBE10A4, AZBH10A4, AZBD10A4	Side Entry Fixed Screw Terminal

[†]Do not command more than 24A continuous current if using the MC1XAZ01-HR with the AZ_60A8 models

Pinouts, dimensions, and ordering information for the mounting cards are obtainable on the mounting card datasheets, available for download at www.a-m-c.com. The mounting cards are shipped with the following included connectors:

TABLE 3.2 MC1XAZ01 Included Quick-Disconnect Connectors

MC1XAZ01 Included Quick-Disconnect Connectors		
Description	Qty. Included	Manufacturer and Part Number
3-position 5.08mm spaced plug terminal	1	Phoenix Contact: 1757022
4-position 5.08mm spaced plug terminal	1	Phoenix Contact: 1757035
8-position 3.5mm spaced plug terminal	2	Phoenix Contact: 1840421

TABLE 3.3 MC1XAZ01-HR Included Quick-Disconnect Connectors

MC1XAZ01-HR Included Quick-Disconnect Connectors		
Description	Qty. Included	Manufacturer and Part Number
8-position 3.5mm spaced plug terminal	2	Phoenix Contact: 1863217

FIGURE 3.3 MC1XAZ01



FIGURE 3.4 Mating Connectors



All four mating connectors shown are included with the MC1XAZ01.

Side-entry versions of the two 8-position connectors are included with the MC1XAZ01-HR.

FIGURE 3.5 MC1XAZ01-HR



FIGURE 3.6 MC1XAZ02



The mounting cards can be secured to a panel, heatsink, or other surface with the use of standoffs or spacers. The following figures show some possible mounting configurations using PCB mount AxCent drives and the MC1XAZ01 and MC1XAZ01-HR mounting cards. **Figure 3.7** below shows an AZ_20A8 drive attached to a MC1XAZ01 mounted to a panel. Four threaded spacers are used to secure the mounting card to the panel. Note that when using an MC1XAZ01 with the included mating connectors, the wire connections to the mounting card will be from the top.

FIGURE 3.7 AZ_20A8 attached to MC1XAZ01 mounted on panel (shown with mating connectors installed)

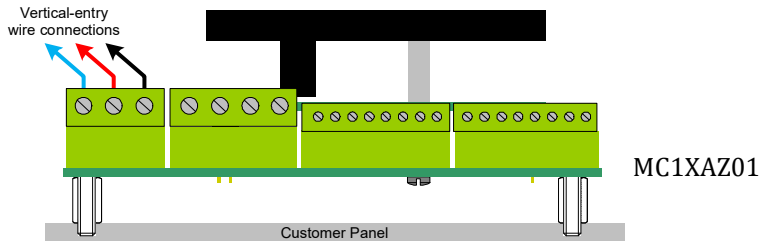
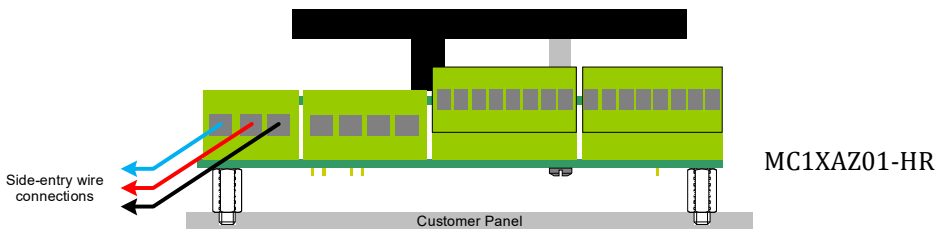


Figure 3.8 below shows an AZ_40A8 drive attached to an MC1XAZ01-HR mounted to a panel. Four threaded spacers are used to secure the mounting card to the panel. Note that when using an MC1XAZ01-HR with the included mating connectors, the wire connections to the mounting card will be from the side.

FIGURE 3.8 AZ_40A8 attached to MC1XAZ01-HR mounted on panel (shown with mating connectors installed)

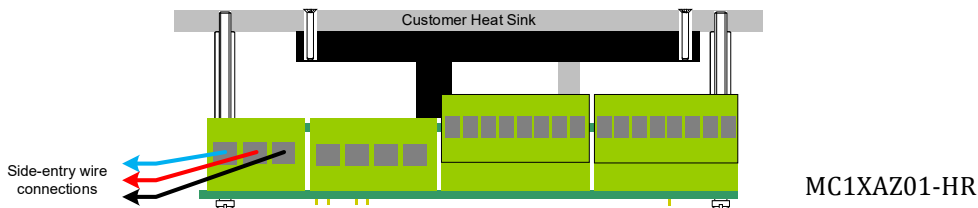


Notice

The MC1XAZ01-HR is useful in system setups for both AZ_40A8 and lower current drives where wire connections from above the mounting card would be difficult due to enclosed spaces or certain mounting configurations (such as **Figure 3.9** below).

Figure 3.9 below shows an AZ_40A8 drive attached to an MC1XAZ01-HR. The drive is secured by two screws through its baseplate to an external heat sink, and the mounting card is secured with four threaded spacers to the external heat sink for additional stability.

FIGURE 3.9 AZ_40A8 drive attached to MC1XAZ01-HR mounted to heat sink (shown with mating connectors installed)



The mounting cards are also designed for easy mounting and installation on a standard DIN-rail tray, available from Phoenix Contact (www.phoenixcontact.com, part number 2952020/UM72/10.16/GN6021). Figure 3.10 below shows an AZ_20A8 drive mounted on a MC1XAZ01 that is installed on a DIN tray.

FIGURE 3.10 MC1XAZ01 and AZ_20A8 Drive Mounted on MC1XAZ01 and Phoenix Contact DIN Tray (mating connectors shown are included with MC1XAZ01, DIN tray shown for reference only, available from Phoenix Contact)



In addition, users may design their own mounting card to mate with a PCB mount AxCent servo drive. For more information on designing an compatible PCB interface card, see “PCB Design” on page 41.

AZB10A4IC The AZB10A4IC is a servo drive and interface mounting card soldered together to provide quick access to all drive features. All drive I/O, supply power, and motor power pins are accessible via connectors on the interface card. Mating connectors for the interface card connections are included and listed below in Table 3.4.

TABLE 3.4 AZB10A4IC Included Quick-Disconnect Connectors

AZB10A4IC Included Quick-Disconnect Connectors		
Description	Qty. Included	Manufacturer and Part Number
12-port 2.0mm spaced plug terminal	1	Molex: P/N 51110-1260 (housing); 50394-8051 (crimp pins)
4-port 2.0mm spaced plug terminal	1	Molex: P/N 51110-0460 (housing); 50394-8051 (crimp pins)
8-port 2.0mm spaced plug terminal	1	Molex: P/N 51110-0860 (housing); 50394-8051 (crimp pins)

FIGURE 3.11 AZB10A4IC

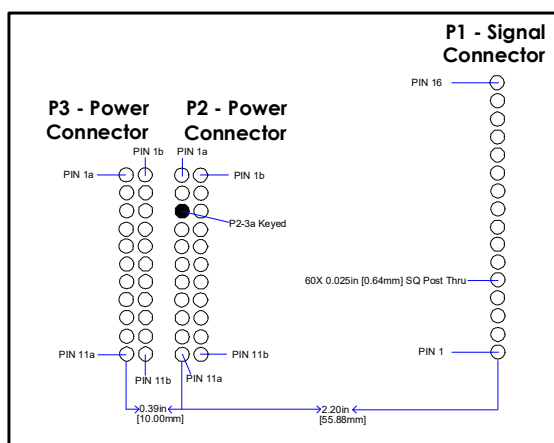


3.5.2 PCB Mounting Options

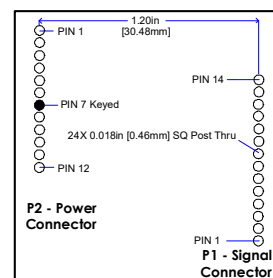
PCB mount AxCent servo drives can be directly integrated onto a PCB, either by mounting the board on socket connectors or by actually soldering the drive to the board. Except for the AZ_10A4 models, PCB mount AxCent drives are designed with a common pin layout throughout the entire drive family, providing the user with the option of designing only one mounting card or PCB interface that is compatible with the different power levels. For an application that may have different versions with higher or lower power requirements, the same mounting card or PCB interface can be used for each application version with the appropriate drive.

FIGURE 3.12 PCB Mount AxCent Drives PCB Footprint (not to scale)

80V and 200V Drive Models



40V Drive Models



For the 80V and 200V drive versions, AZ_6A8 and AZ_12A8 drive models connect to P1 and the "A" row of P2, while AZ_20A8 and AZ_10A20 drives connect to P1 and both rows of P2. AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8, and AZ_25A20 models connect to P1, P2, and P3.



Notice

The MC1XAZ01 and MC1XAZ01-HR mounting cards contain a "keyed" socket connector on P2 to coincide with the "keyed" power header on PCB mount AxCent drives. It is recommended to include this feature on user designed mounting cards to avoid connecting the drive with the wrong orientation.

Mating Connectors PCB mount AxCent drives use square post male headers for signal and power pins that are designed for fast and easy removal from PCB-mount socket connectors, making this option particularly useful when prototyping.

TABLE 3.5 PCB Mount AxCent Drives Socket Mating Connectors

Connector	Pins	Manufacturer and Part Number
Signal Connector - AZB10A4, AZBDC10A4	12	Samtec: RSM-112-02-L-S
Signal Connector - AZBE10A4, AZBH10A4, AZBD10A4	14	Samtec: RSM-114-02-L-S
Signal Connector - AZ_6A8, AZ_12A8, AZ_20A8, AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8, AZ_10A20, AZ_25A20	16	Samtec: BCS-116-L-S-PE
Power Connector - AZ_10A4	12	Samtec: RSM-112-02-L-S
Power Connector - AZ_6A8 and AZ_12A8	11	Samtec: BCS-111-L-S-PE
Power Connector - AZ_20A8, AZ_40A8*, AZ_60A8*, AZ_10A20, AZ_25A20*	22	Samtec: BCS-111-L-D-PE

*AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8, and AZ_25A20 drive models will require two BCS-111-L-D-PE mating connectors for the power connectors

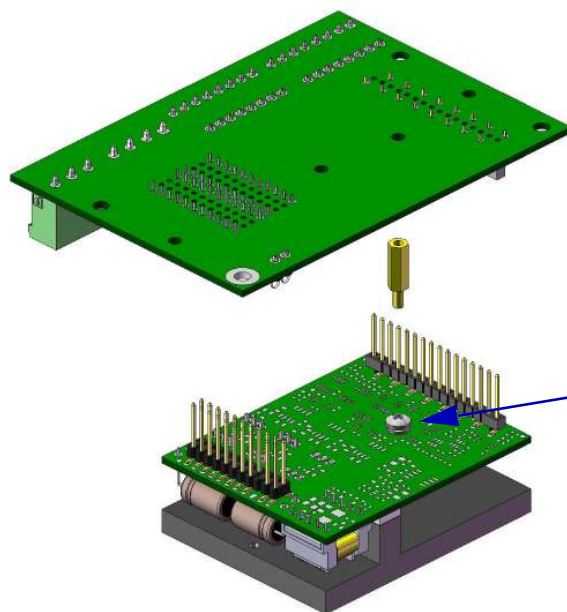
Soldering Soldering a PCB mount AxCent board directly to a PCB provides added support against mechanical shocks and vibration. It is recommended to solder drives to a PCB following the industry standard for Acceptability of Electronic Assemblies IPC-A-610D. Use solder with no-clean flux. PCB mount AxCent drives can be soldered by any of the following methods:

- wave soldering
- hand soldering
- selective wave soldering

To clean the PCB and drive after soldering, it is recommended to gently apply isopropyl alcohol or a cleaning agent with a soft-bristled brush. Use care not to apply downward pressure, but rather lightly brush the PCB and drive. Do not immerse the drive in a cleaning agent.

Screw Mounting For added stability and support, PCB mount AxCent drives can be mounted with screws in tandem with one of the options above. [Figure 3.13](#) shows how AZ_20A8, AZ_40A8, AZ_60A8, AZ_10A20, and AZ_25A20 drives can be mounted to a mounting card using a spacer, and [Figure 3.14](#) shows the mounting procedure for AZ_6A8 and AZ_12A8 drives. AZ_10A4 models feature two screw mounting locations on opposite corners of the PCB. See “[Physical Dimensions](#)” on [page 65](#) and/or the specific drive’s datasheet for exact screw locations and dimensions.

FIGURE 3.13 Screw Mount Diagram

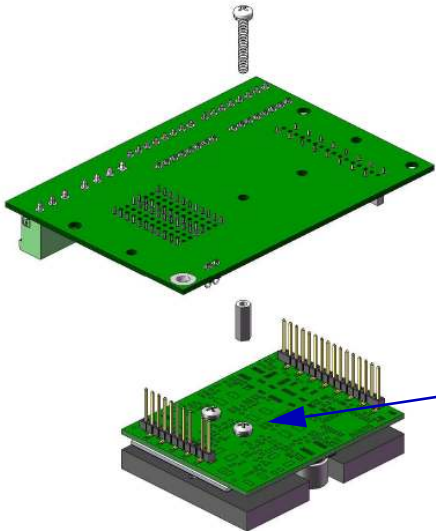


Remove drive mounting screw, and replace with spacer*. Use the removed drive mounting screw to secure mounting card to drive from the bottom of the mounting card through the spacer after drive has been inserted in mounting card socket connectors.

Drive Mounting Screw

*Spacer not included with drive or mounting card. Spacer shown is standard 3/16" hex 4/40 thread, male/female, 7/16" length.

FIGURE 3.14 Screw Mount Diagram



Remove drive mounting screw, and align spacer* over empty screw hole on drive PCB. Use a 4/40 thread, 1" screw to secure mounting card to drive from the bottom of the mounting card through the spacer after drive has been inserted in mounting card socket connectors.

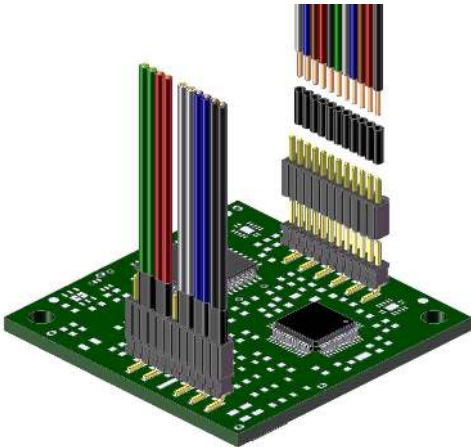
Drive Mounting Screw

*Spacer not included with drive or mounting card. Spacer shown is #4 clear, 7/16" length.

Larger model PCB mount AxCent drives can also be screw mounted through two 4/40 thread screw holes on either side of the baseplate onto an external heatsink or other mounting plate for added stability and resiliency against mechanical vibration. Mounting to an external heatsink also provides better thermal management behavior than other mounting options. See [“Ambient Temperature Range and Thermal Data” on page 25](#) for more info.

Direct Cabling AZ_10A4 models can be directly cabled to using the recommended mating connector (Samtec P/N: SLM-112-01-L-S or SLM-114-01-L-S) as shown in [Figure 3.15](#).

FIGURE 3.15 AZ_10A4 Direct Cabling



3.6 PCB Design

When designing a PCB board to interface with a PCB mount AxCent drive, there are some key features that must be kept in mind to ensure proper operation.

3.6.1 Trace Width and Routing

The proper design and implementation of the PCB traces on an interface card is essential in maximizing drive efficiency and noise reduction.

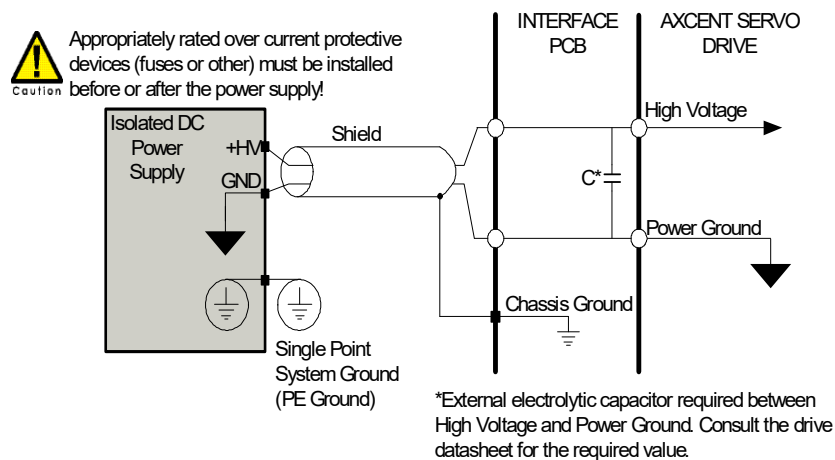
- **Keep high and low power signals separated** - Although PCB mount AxCent servo drives have an internal connection between power and signal ground, the traces emitting from the Power Connector, P2, carry high currents and voltages, while the traces emitting from the Signal Connector, P1, carry low currents voltages. Refrain from routing traces from P2 near traces from P1, and never route them in parallel. If power traces and signal traces need to cross, they should do so at right angles.
- **Keep high current traces short** - Traces carrying high current, such as the DC Power traces and Motor Signal traces, should be kept short and close together to minimize noise emissions. Also, keep DC Power traces separate from Motor Signal traces where possible.
- **Design for maximum values** - Adjacent traces can carry a voltage potential equal to the maximum DC power supply value, and carry current of both the servo drive's peak and continuous current ratings. The trace width and copper plating thickness will need to take these maximum values into account. Also, be aware that PCB mount AxCent servo drive pin headers have a maximum current rating of 3 amps DC per pin. In order to achieve a higher overall peak current capability, some high current signals "share" a group of pins to spread the current between them. High current traces running to these pin groups should be inter-connected on the PCB board. Consult the drive's datasheet or the "Pinouts" section in ["Products Covered" on page 7](#) for these pin groupings.

3.7 Interface Circuitry Examples

The following sections show examples of how an interface board could be designed to work with a PCB mount AxCent servo drive, and also contain general connection rules and instructions.

DC Power Input The diagram below shows how a PCB mount AxCent servo drive connects to an isolated DC Power Supply through a mounting card/interface PCB. Notice that the power supply wires are shielded, and that the power supply case is grounded at the single point system ground (PE Ground). The cable shield should be grounded at the mounting card or PCB interface side to chassis ground.

FIGURE 3.16 DC Power Input Wiring



Notice

Depending on the power capacity of the drive model being used there may be multiple pins for DC Input Power connections. Refer to the datasheet of the specific model being used. The maximum current capacity per pin is 3A continuous.

Motor Power Output The diagram below shows how a PCB mount AxCent servo drive connects to a motor through a mounting card/interface PCB. Both brush-type and brushless motors should follow this general setup. Notice that the motor wires are shielded, and that the motor housing is grounded to the single point system ground (PE Ground). The cable shield should be grounded at the mounting card or PCB interface side to chassis ground.

FIGURE 3.17 Three Phase Motor Power Output Wiring

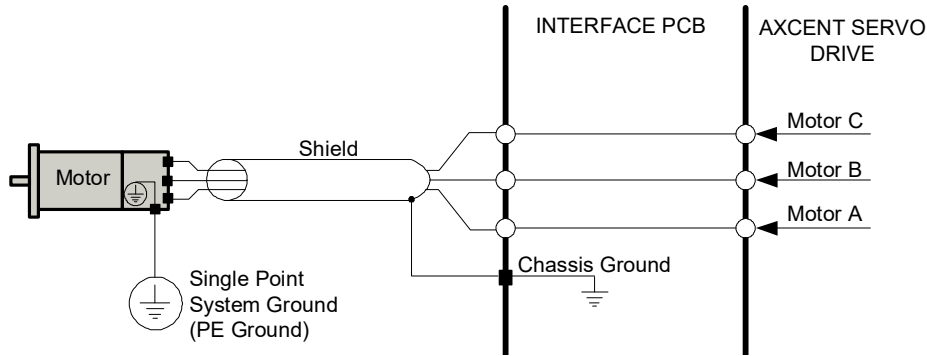
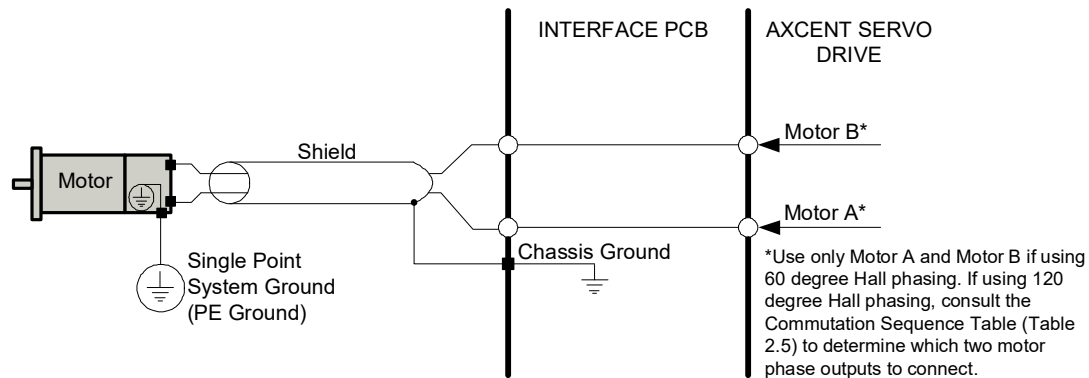


FIGURE 3.18 Single Phase Motor Power Output Wiring



Notice

Depending on the power capacity of the drive model being used there may be multiple pins for Motor Power connections. Refer to the datasheet of the specific model being used. The maximum current capacity per pin is 3A continuous.

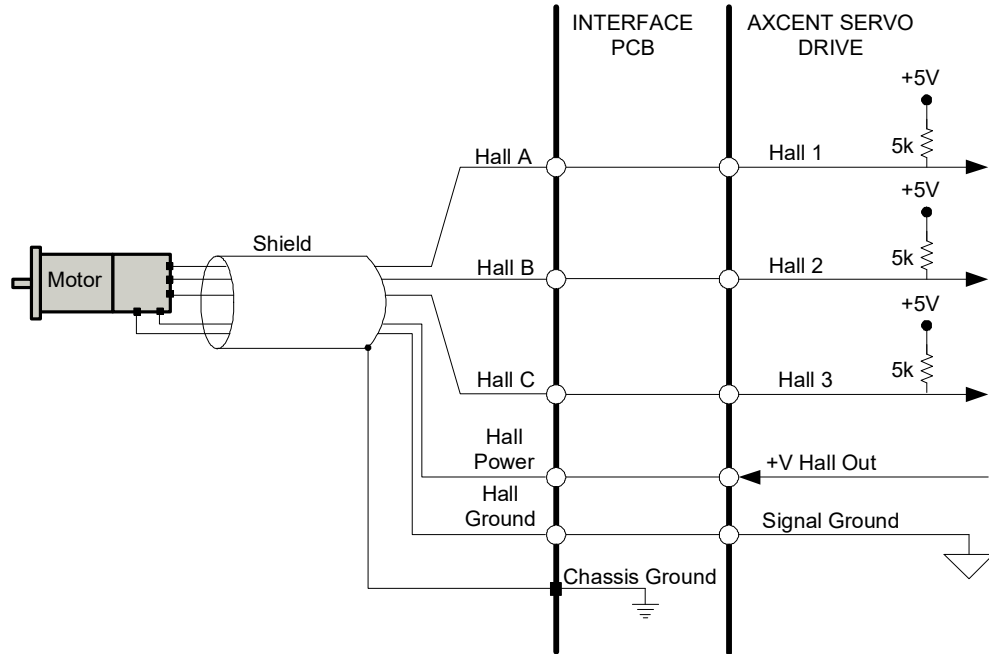


Caution

If using relays or other means to disconnect the motor leads, be sure the drive is disabled before reconnecting the motor leads to the drive. Connecting the motor leads to the drive while it is enabled can generate extremely high voltage spikes which will damage the drive.

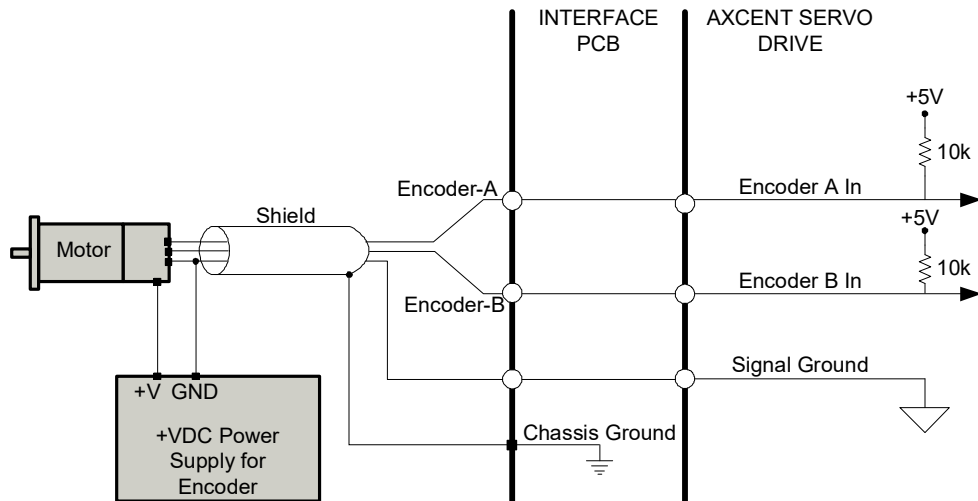
Hall Sensor Inputs PCB mount AxCent drives allow single-ended Hall Sensor inputs both for commutation, and in the special case of AZBH drives, for velocity feedback. Certain models provide a +6V low power supply to power the Hall Sensors. Below is the recommended circuitry when designing a mounting card to interface with a PCB mount AxCent drive.

FIGURE 3.19 Hall Sensor Interface Wiring

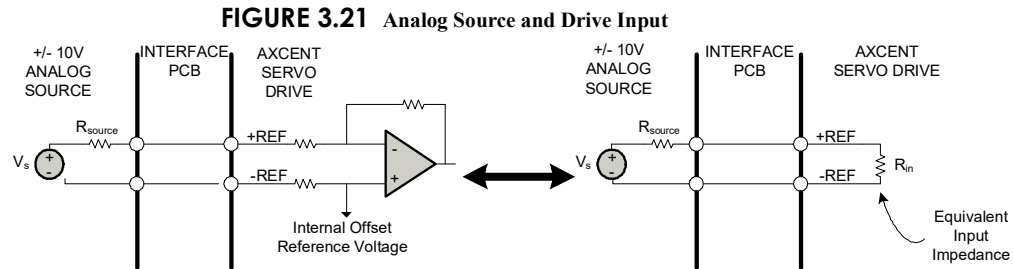


Encoder Inputs AZBE drives support single-ended incremental encoder inputs. The encoder must be powered by an external power supply. Check the motor and encoder specifications for the encoder voltage and current requirements. Below is the recommended circuitry when designing a mounting card to interface with a PCB mount AxCent drive.

FIGURE 3.20 Encoder Input Interface Wiring

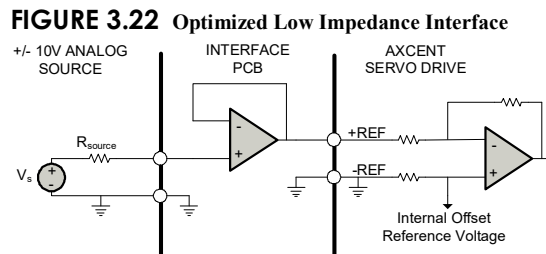


±10V Analog Reference Input When using a ±10V analog signal for an input command, it is important to consider the output impedance of the analog source when interfacing to input circuitry. A poorly designed ±10V analog input interface can lead to undesired command signal attenuation. Figure 3.21 shows an external analog source connected to an analog input. The ideal voltage delivered to the input is V_s . However, the voltage drop across R_{source} will reduce the signal being delivered to the drive input. This voltage drop is dependent on the value of R_{source} and the drive's input impedance.

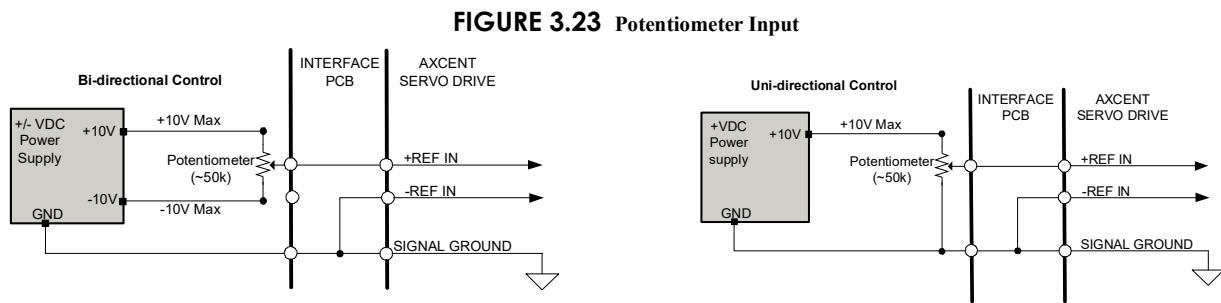


The drive's analog input can be simplified to a single impedance, R_{in} , as shown in Figure 3.21. If the impedance of R_{source} is of the same magnitude or larger than R_{in} , there will be a significant voltage drop across R_{source} . Reduced values of R_{source} cause a lower voltage drop that increases signal integrity. In order to avoid a voltage drop of more than 5% between the source and the drive, it is recommended to use an R_{source} value of less than or equal to 2kohm.

If there is a large output impedance from the analog source, it is recommended to use a buffer circuit between the analog source output and the drive input. A unity gain op-amp circuit as shown in Figure 3.22 will ensure low output impedance with minimal voltage drop.

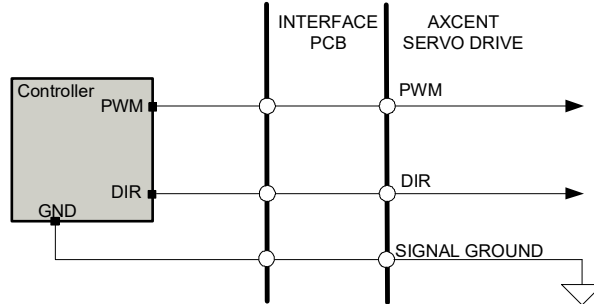


Potentiometer Input PCB mount AxCent servo drives can be commanded with the use of an external potentiometer and a DC supply by varying the DC supply voltage across the potentiometer.



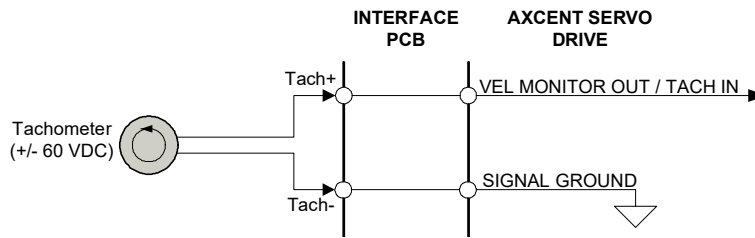
PWM and Direction Input For AZBDC drive models, the PWM and Direction inputs should be connected to the PWM and DIR input pins on the drive.

FIGURE 3.24 PWM and Direction Input Wiring



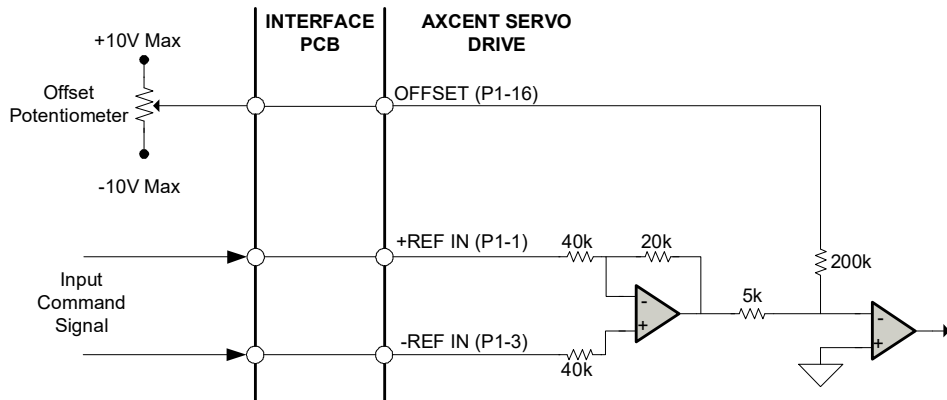
Tachometer Input For drive models that allow an external DC Tachometer for velocity control, the tachometer is connected between the Velocity Monitor Output / Tachometer Input pin (P1-15) and signal ground (either P1-7 or P1-2). The tachometer is limited to a feedback voltage range of ± 60 VDC. The diagram below shows the recommended connection method.

FIGURE 3.25 DC Tachometer Input Wiring



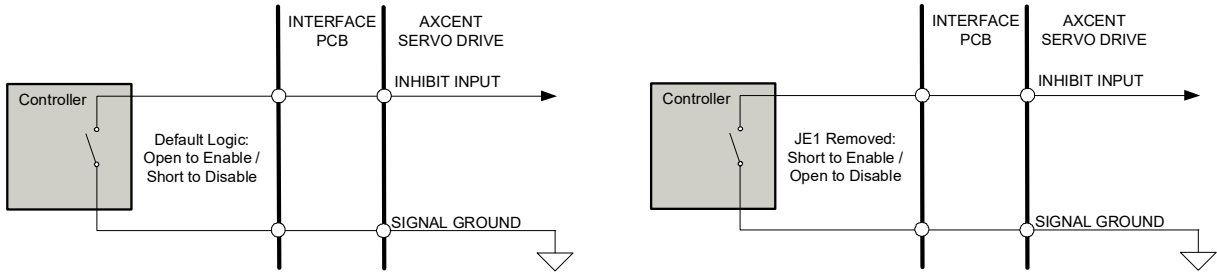
Offset Input For drive models that have an external offset input option, a potentiometer can be used in addition to the input command signal when an input offset adjustment is desired. The diagram below shows one possible connection method using a potentiometer for the offset input.

FIGURE 3.26 Offset Input Wiring



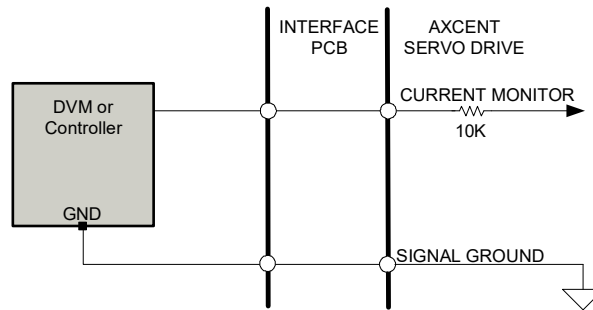
Inhibit Input PCB mount AxCent drives feature an Inhibit Input pin that is used to either enable or disable the drive. By default, the Inhibit Input pin should be left open to enable the drive, and brought to Signal Ground to disable the drive. This logic can be reversed if jumper JE1 is removed, however.

FIGURE 3.27 Inhibit Input Wiring



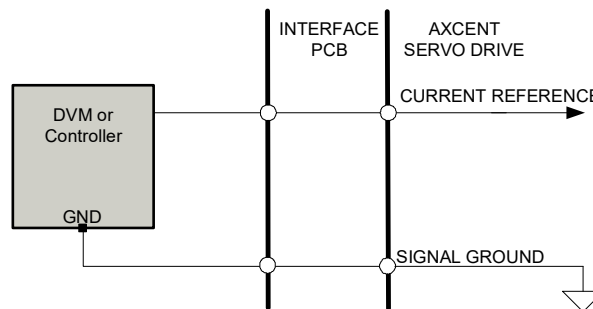
Current Monitor Output PCB mount AxCent drives feature a Current Monitor output that provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the actual current output. The Current Monitor output should be measured relative to Signal Ground.

FIGURE 3.28 Current Monitor Output Wiring



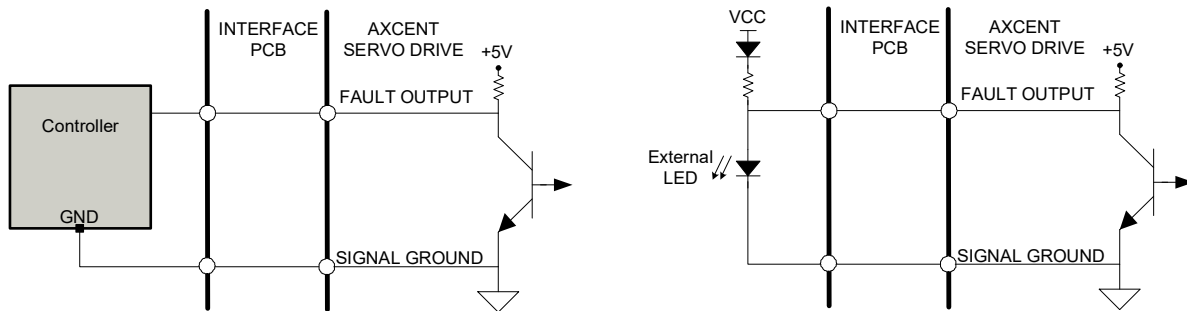
Current Reference Output Some PCB mount AxCent drives feature a Current Reference output that provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the command signal to the internal current loop. The Current Reference output should be measured relative to Signal Ground.

FIGURE 3.29 Current Reference Output Wiring



Fault Output PCB mount AxCent drives feature a +5V TTL Fault output that will become high when the drive is subject to a fault condition (see “Fault Output” on page 50 for a list of fault conditions). The Fault output should be measured relative to Signal Ground. The Fault output can also be used with an external LED as shown in Figure 3.30.

FIGURE 3.30 Fault Output Wiring



4 Operation

This chapter will present a brief introduction on how to test and operate a PCB mount AxCent™ servo drive. Read through this entire section before attempting to test the drive or make any connections.

4.1 Getting Started

To begin operation with your PCB mount AxCent drive, be sure to read and understand the previous chapters in this manual as well as the drive datasheet. Be sure that all system specifications and requirements have been met, and become familiar with the capabilities and functions of the drive. Also, be aware of the [“Troubleshooting”](#) section at the end of this manual for solutions to basic operation issues.

4.1.1 Input/Output Pin Functions

The family of PCB mount AxCent drives provides a number of various input and output pins for parameter observation and drive configuration options. Consult the drive datasheet to see which input/output pin functions are available for each drive.

Current Monitor Output The current monitor pin is available on all PCB mount AxCent drive models. Measured relative to signal ground, it provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the actual current output. The scaling factor for each individual drive can be found on the drive datasheet. Note that the polarity of the current monitor measurement will be reversed from the current command.

Example Measurement

The current monitor pin on a drive with a current monitor scaling factor of 4 A/V is measured to be -1.3V. With the polarity reversed on the current monitor pin, this would mean the drive is outputting: $(4 \text{ A/V})(1.3\text{V}) = 5.2\text{A}$.

Current Reference Output The current reference pin is available on 80V and 200V drive models. Measured relative to signal ground, it provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the command signal to the internal current loop. When the drive output

reaches the maximum peak current value, the current reference pin will read 7.45V. The command to the internal current loop can be solved for by the following equation:

$$I_{\text{command}} = V_{\text{current ref}} \cdot \frac{I_{\text{peak}}}{7.45V}$$

Where:

I_{command} -command current to the internal current loop
 $V_{\text{current ref}}$ -measured voltage at current reference pin
 I_{peak} -peak current value of AZ drive

Example Measurement

The current reference pin on a PCB mount AxCent drive with a peak current value of 12A is measured to be 2.63V. Following the above equation to solve for I_{command} , the command current to the internal current loop would be **4.24A**.

Fault Output The fault output is available on all PCB mount AxCent drive models. This pin provides a +5V TTL output that will become high when the drive is subject to one of the following fault conditions: inhibit (except on AZ_10A4 models), invalid Hall State, output short circuit, over voltage, over temperature, or power-up reset. This pin will remain low when the drive is enabled.

PCB mount AxCent drives automatically self-reset once all active fault conditions have been removed. For instance if the DC power supply rises above the over-voltage shutdown level of the drive, the Fault Output will go high, and the drive will be disabled. Once the DC power supply level is returned to a value below the drive over-voltage shutdown level, the Fault Output will become low, and the drive will automatically become enabled.

Inhibit Input The inhibit input pin is available on all PCB mount AxCent drive models. This pin provides a +5V TTL input that allows a user to enable/disable the drive by either connecting this pin to ground or by applying a +5VDC voltage level to this pin, referenced to signal ground. By default, all PCB mount AxCent drives will be enabled if this pin is high, and disabled if this pin is low. This logic can be reversed, however, by removing the jumper JE1 from the drive PCB.

Low Power Supply Output The low power supply provides a +6 VDC, 30 mA output that can be used to power Hall Sensors on three phase drives (consult the motor datasheet to find out which feedback wire is the Hall Sensor power supply wire) or for other user requirements on single phase drives.



Notice

Do not use this +6V supply to power an encoder. An encoder will require a separate external power supply. Consult the encoder datasheet or specifications to determine the encoder voltage and current requirements. Typical values are +5VDC at 150mA.

Velocity Monitor Output The velocity monitor output pin is available on AZBE, AZBH, and AZBD drive models only. This pin provides an analog voltage output that is proportional to the actual motor speed.

- For AZBE drives in Encoder Velocity Mode, substitute the voltage value read at the velocity monitor pin, V_{monitor} , into the below equation to determine the motor RPM:

$$\text{Motor Velocity [RPM]} = \frac{V_{\text{monitor}} \cdot 22 \frac{\text{kHz}}{\text{V}} \cdot 60}{\text{Number of encoder lines}}$$

- For AZBH drives in Hall Velocity Mode, substitute the voltage value read at the velocity monitor pin, V_{monitor} , into the below equation to determine the motor RPM:

$$\text{Motor Velocity [RPM]} = \frac{V_{\text{monitor}} \cdot 100 \frac{\text{Hz}}{\text{V}} \cdot 120}{\text{Number of motor poles}}$$

Tachometer Input For AZBE and AZBH drive models, when the drive is set to Tachometer Velocity mode by DIP-switch setting, the Velocity Monitor Output pin is used as a DC Tachometer Input. The drive *must* be in Tachometer Velocity Mode in order to properly use the tachometer input. The maximum input allowed at the tachometer input pin is ± 60 VDC.



Notice

When using a DC Tachometer in Tachometer Velocity mode, the velocity monitor output function is inactive.

4.1.2 Potentiometer Function Details

AZBE and AZBH drive models utilize two 0 to 50 k Ω potentiometers for Loop Gain and Offset functions. Both potentiometers vary in resistance from 0 to 50 k Ω , over 12 turns. An additional full turn that does not effect resistance is provided on either end, for a total of 14 turns. When the end of potentiometer travel is reached, it will click once for each additional turn.

TABLE 4.1 Potentiometer Function Details

Potentiometer	Description
Loop Gain Adjustment (located closest to corner of PCB)	This potentiometer must be set completely counter-clockwise in Current Mode. In Velocity or Duty Cycle Mode, this potentiometer adjusts the gain in the velocity forward position of the closed loop. Turning this potentiometer clockwise increases the gain. Start from the full counter-clockwise position, turn the potentiometer clockwise until the motor shaft oscillates, then back off one turn.
Offset (located furthest from corner of PCB)	This potentiometer is used to adjust a small amount of command offset in order to compensate for offsets that may be present in the servo system. Turning this potentiometer clockwise adjusts the offset in a negative direction relative to the +Ref input command. Before offset adjustments are made, the reference inputs must be grounded or commanded to 0 volts.

Potentiometer Tool *ADVANCED* Motion Controls offers a tool for adjusting the potentiometers, part number **PT01**. This tool features an exposed stainless steel blade on one end and a

recessed stainless steel blade on the other end. Contact customer service for ordering information.

4.2 Initial Setup

Carefully follow the grounding and wiring instructions in the previous chapters to make sure your system is safely and properly set up. For initial testing purposes, it is not necessary to use a controller to provide a command input, or to have any load attached to the motor. The items required will be:

- PCB mount AxCent Servo Drive attached to Mounting Card or PCB Interface
- Motor
- DC Power Supply for supplying power to system
- Digital Multimeter (or ohmmeter and voltmeter)

4.2.1 Current (Torque) Mode Test

Initially, the drive should be placed in Current (Torque) Mode. By default, all PCB mount AxCent drives are shipped already set for Current (Torque) Mode. However, certain drives have the option of using DIP switches to configure the drive for other modes. If using a drive model with multiple possible modes, check the DIP switch configuration to be certain the drive is in Current (Torque) Mode. Mode configuration tables can be found on the drive datasheet.

Connections Test Before applying power to the drive, connect the PCB mount AxCent drive to the mounting card or PCB interface, using any of the mounting options from [“Mounting” on page 35](#). Using an ohmmeter or digital multimeter, test the connections between the mounting card or PCB interface headers and the drive pins. Check for any shorts or open circuits. At this point, also check the ground connection of the whole system (drive, mounting card, Motor). All these elements should have their case or chassis connected to a central grounding point in a "star" configuration. For review, see [“Grounding” on page 30](#).

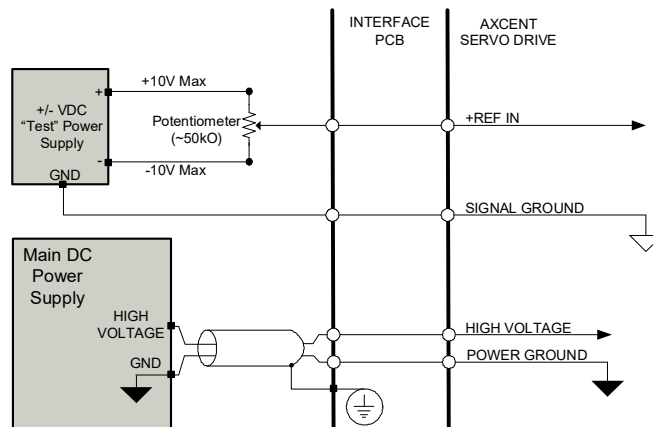
Power Supply

1. Before wiring the DC power supply to the mounting card and drive, use a voltmeter or digital multimeter to make sure the DC voltage level is within specifications.
2. Do not turn on the DC power supply yet. Connect the DC power supply wires to the mounting card or PCB interface. Do not connect directly to the drive header pins. Be sure the high voltage and ground connections do not get reversed, as this will damage the drive.
3. Turn on the DC power supply. Monitor the DC voltage on the mounting card test points or PCB interface to be sure the voltage level is within specifications. Once certain that power is being properly applied to the drive, turn the DC power supply off.

Input Command Wiring Follow the instructions below to properly wire the input command of the drive, but do not apply any power or input signal yet.

- For drives that use ± 10 V analog input, one method of testing the functionality of the drive within the system is by using an external reference potentiometer (approximately 50 k Ω) as an input command signal. By applying a positive DC voltage (10V max) to one end of the potentiometer, and a negative DC voltage (10V max) to the other end of the potentiometer, a \pm analog signal can be sent through the potentiometer's wiper into the +REF input pin on the mounting card or PCB interface (see drive datasheet or "Pinouts" on page 15 for pin labels). The voltages applied to the external reference potentiometer should come from a "test" power supply that is different than the main DC power. This separate \pm VDC "test" power supply should be referenced to the drive signal ground.

FIGURE 4.1 Reference Input Potentiometer



- Without connecting the potentiometer wiper to the mounting card or PCB interface, apply the "test" \pm VDC to the two sides of the potentiometer.
 - Measure the wiper of the potentiometer with a voltmeter or digital multimeter, and verify that by turning the potentiometer in both directions, the full range of \pm VDC is observable on the potentiometer wiper. This voltage will serve as a "test" command.
 - Once the full range of \pm VDC has been verified, turn the potentiometer so that approximately 0 VDC is observed on the potentiometer wiper, then turn off the "test" power supply.
 - With no voltage command applied to the potentiometer, connect the wiper to the +REF IN input pin on the mounting card or PCB interface. Connect the "test" power supply ground or common to the drive signal ground on the mounting card or PCB interface.
- For drives that use PWM and Direction input, a Function Generator should be set up to generate a simple +5V square wave at a frequency of 10-25 kHz. Connect the Function Generator signal to the PWM input pin on the drive, (see drive datasheet or "Pinouts" on page 15 for pin labels) and the common to the signal ground pin on the drive.

Hall Sensors

- (For brushless motors) With the DC power supply still turned off, connect the Hall Sensors to the Hall input pins on the mounting card or PCB interface. Also, connect the +V HALL OUT +6V supply from the drive to the Hall Power line (consult the motor datasheet to see which wires from the motor are the Hall Input lines and Hall Power line).

(For brushed motors) If using 60-degree Hall phasing, leave all Hall input pins open. If using 120-degree Hall phasing, tie one of the Hall inputs to ground, and leave the other two open.

2. Turn on the DC power supply to the system.
3. Use a digital multimeter or voltmeter, to monitor the Fault Output pin (see [“Fault Output” on page 50](#) for more information).
4. Manually rotate the motor shaft by hand a few revolutions. If all the Hall Sensors are functioning properly, the Fault Output signal should stay low. If the Fault Output signal goes high, this could indicate either a short or bad connection in the Hall Sensor wires, or an invalid commutation state. See [“Hall Sensors” on page 10](#) for information on Hall commutation.
5. Once verified, turn off the DC power supply.

Motor With the DC power supply still turned off, connect the motor wires to the appropriate motor output pins on the mounting card or PCB interface.

- For three phase (brushless) motors, there will be three wires to connect. For now, connect the wires in any order to the motor output pins on the mounting card or PCB interface. These may need to be changed later in order to properly commutate the motor.
- For single phase (brushed) motors, there will be two wires to connect. If using 60-degree Hall phasing, connect the wires to motor output phases A and B in any order. If using 120-degree Hall phasing, then the proper motor output phases will depend on the Hall commutation state. See [“Using a Single Phase Motor” on page 11](#) for more information.

Applying a Command (Analog Input) At this stage, everything that is needed to test operation should be connected to the drive through the mounting card or PCB interface, all the elements should be properly grounded in a central point location, and no power or input command should be applied to any element in the system.

Once certain that all these steps have been safely and properly followed, turn on the main DC power supply. Use a voltmeter or digital multimeter to once again check the DC power supply level.

Analog Input Drives

1. Turn on the "test" power supply connected to the external potentiometer.
2. Slowly turn the potentiometer in one direction while observing the motor shaft.



Caution

Only make very slight adjustments to the reference potentiometer to avoid causing damage to the motor. Since the drive is in Current (Torque) Mode and there is no load on the motor shaft, even a small potentiometer adjustment can create high speeds at the motor shaft. Exercise caution when adjusting the potentiometer.

- For single phase motors, this should cause the motor shaft to energize in one direction. Slowly turning the potentiometer further in that same direction, and also in the opposite direction should cause the motor shaft to move smoothly in response to the input.
- For three phase motors, the three motor wires may have to be changed in order to properly commutate the motor. There are six different ways that the three motor wires

can be attached to the mounting card or PCB interface. All six will have to be tested in order to find the right commutation.



Warning

Before removing the motor wires, turn off both the main DC power supply and the "test" power supply. Never remove or make any connections to the drive while power is applied!

The proper combination of motor wires will yield smooth motion and identical speeds in both directions. Improper combinations will cause jerky motion, slow movement in one direction, and/or audible noise. Once the proper combination has been found, turning the potentiometer slowly in both directions should cause the motor shaft to rotate appropriately in response to the input.

PWM Input Drives

1. Turn on the function generator to apply the PWM signal to the PWM IN pin.
2. Monitor the Function Generator PWM signal on an oscilloscope. Be sure to keep the PWM frequency within the 10-25 kHz range. By varying the duty cycle of the PWM input signal, the motor shaft should rotate in response to the input.
 - For single phase motors, this should cause the motor shaft to energize in one direction. Slowly varying the PWM duty cycle should cause the motor shaft to move smoothly in response to the input.
 - For three phase motors, the three motor wires may have to be changed in order to properly commutate the motor. There are six different ways that the three motor wires can be attached to the mounting card or PCB interface. All six will have to be tested in order to find the right commutation.



Warning

Before removing the motor wires, turn off both the main DC power supply and the Function Generator. Never remove or make any connections to the drive while power is applied!

The proper combination of motor wires will yield smooth motion and identical speeds in both directions. Improper combinations will cause jerky motion, slow movement in one direction, and/or audible noise. Once the proper combination has been found, varying the duty cycle should cause the motor shaft to rotate appropriately in response to the input.

Motor Direction For brushless motors, if it is desired to change the motor direction for a given command input, interchange Hall 1 and Hall 3, then Motor A and Motor B.

4.3 Tuning Procedure

The standard tuning values used in *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' servo drives are conservative and work well in over 90% of applications. However some applications and some motors require more complete current loop tuning to achieve the desired performance. The following are indications that additional current loop tuning is necessary:

- Motor rapidly overheats even at low current
- Drive rapidly overheats even at low current
- Vibration sound comes from the drive or motor
- The motor has a high inductance (+10mH)
- The motor has a low inductance (near minimum rating of the drive)
- Slow system response times
- Excessive torque ripple
- Difficulty tuning position or velocity loops
- Electrical noise problems
- High power supply voltage (power supply is significantly higher than the motor voltage rating or near the drive's upper voltage limit)
- Low power supply voltage (power supply voltage is near the drive's lower voltage limit)

The above indicators are subjective and suggest that the current loop may need to be tuned. These can also be signs of other problems not related to current loop tuning.

The resistors and capacitors shown under the current control block on the datasheet block diagram determine the frequency response of the current loop. It is important to tune the current loop appropriately for the motor inductance and resistance, as well as the bus voltage to obtain optimum performance. The loop gain and integrator capacitance of the current loop must both be adjusted for the tuning to be complete.



Caution

Improper current loop tuning may result in permanent drive and/or motor damage regardless of drive current limits.

Since most *ADVANCED* Motion Controls servo drives close the current loop internally, poor current loop tuning cannot be corrected with tuning from an external controller. Only after the current loop tuning is complete can optimal performance be achieved with the velocity and position loops.

The general current loop tuning procedure for drives follows these steps:

1. Determine if additional current loop tuning is necessary.
2. If tuning is necessary, then the current loop components must be changed.
 - Tune the current loop proportional gain.
 - Tune the current loop integral gain.
3. Once the current loop is tuned, then the velocity and/or position loops may be tuned as well if necessary.

Equipment Necessary for Tuning

- Function Generator
- Oscilloscope
- Current Probe or Resistor (high powered, low resistance)
- Soldering Iron

Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment The Current Loop Gain should be adjusted with the motor uncoupled from the load, and the motor secured as sudden motor shaft movement may occur. To keep the motor from commutating during tuning, make sure the Hall Sensor wires are not connected to the drive at this point.

1. Use the DIP switches on Velocity Mode capable drives to select Current Mode (other drives are automatically in Current Mode).
2. Connect only the motor power leads to the drive. No other connections should be made at this point.
3. Using a function generator, apply a ± 0.5 V, 50-100 Hz square wave reference signal to the input reference pins.
4. Short out the current loop integrator capacitor(s). Contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for capacitor location.

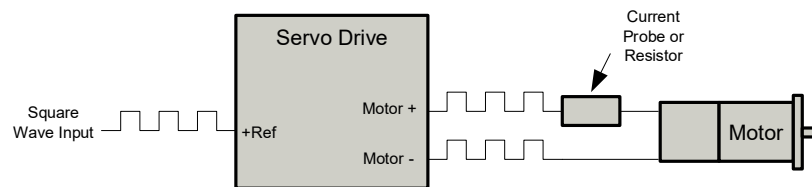


Notice

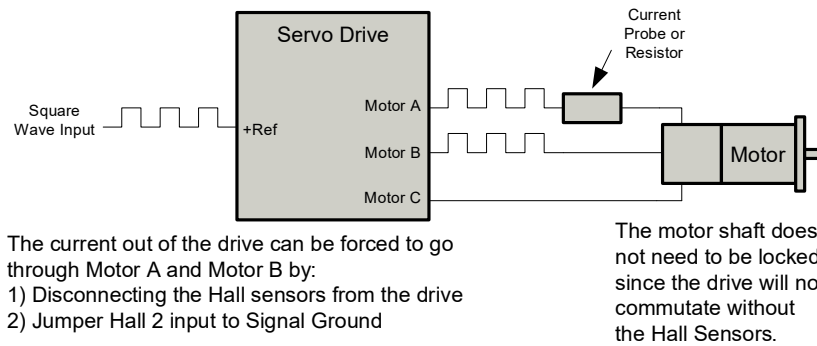
Any damage done to the drive while performing these modifications will void the product warranty.

5. Apply power to the drive. Use a bus voltage that is approximate to the desired application voltage or the current loop compensation will not be optimized.
6. The drive should be enabled. Observe the motor current with an oscilloscope by using a current probe or resistor in series with the motor ($<10\%$ of motor resistance). Depending on the motor type, the drives need to be set up differently to view the current loop response properly, as shown in the following figures.

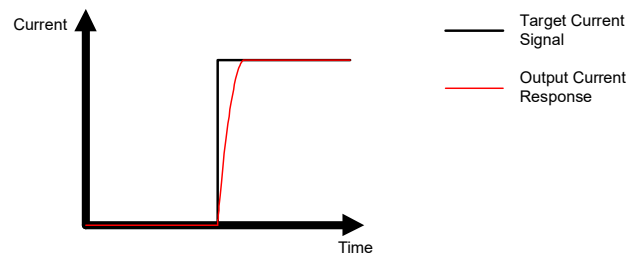
FIGURE 4.2 Brushed Motors



Since the two motor wires are in series, the current through the wires is the same. The current probe can be attached to either wire with the same results. To keep the motor from turning during the tuning process the motor shaft must be locked.

FIGURE 4.3 Brushless Motors

7. The drive output should follow the input command. The best response will be a critically damped output waveform, similar to what is shown in [Figure 4.4](#).

FIGURE 4.4 Current Loop Response

8. If the drive output did not result in a proper square wave response, then the current loop gain resistors may need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Loop Tuning” on page 60](#) for more information.
9. When the proper response has been achieved, remove the input signal from the drive, and disconnect power.

Current Loop Integrator Adjustment

1. Enable the Current Loop Integrator by removing the jumper previously used to short it during the proportional gain adjustment, and start with the default capacitor.
2. Using a function generator, apply a $\pm 0.5V$, 50-100 Hz square wave reference signal.
3. Apply power to the drive. Use a bus voltage that is approximate to the desired application voltage or the current loop compensation will not be correct.
4. The drive should be enabled. Observe the motor current with an oscilloscope by using a current probe or resistor in series with the motor (<10% of motor resistance). The output should settle to a flat top with minimal current following error (difference

between commanded current and actual current). There can be some overshoot, but it should be less than 10%.



Because the oscilloscope measurements are voltage representations of current, the commanded and actual currents will most likely have different current to voltage scalings and tolerances. Therefore, even with perfect current loop tuning, the two amplitudes (scope traces) may not line up as shown in [Figure 4.4](#).

5. If the square wave output overshoots too much or is over-damped (sluggish), the current loop integrator capacitor will need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Loop Tuning” on page 60](#) for more information.

Duty Cycle or Velocity Loop Tuning For AZBE and AZBH drives, the velocity loop proportional gain can be tuned for the system requirements by adjusting the Loop Gain potentiometer. These adjustments should initially be performed with the motor uncoupled from the mechanical load.

Configure the drive for the desired operation mode using the DIP Switches (see the drive datasheet for the specific settings).

- Duty Cycle Loop - Compensating the duty cycle loop requires the least amount of effort. Turn the Loop Gain potentiometer clockwise until oscillation occurs, then back off one turn.
- Velocity Loop (Encoder, Halls, or Tachometer) - The velocity loop response is determined by the Loop Gain potentiometer as well. A larger resistance value (clockwise) results in a faster response. A smaller resistance value (counter-clockwise) results in a slower response. Adjust the Loop Gain potentiometer as necessary for the desired application performance.

If adjustments to the Loop Gain potentiometer do not result in the desired performance, the velocity loop integrator capacitor may need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Loop Tuning” on page 60](#) for more information.

A Loop Tuning

In general, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls' servo drives will not need to be further tuned. However, for applications requiring more precise tuning, the drive can be manually modified with resistors and capacitors as denoted in [Table A.1](#) below.

It is recommended to contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls to discuss application requirements and proper drive tuning prior to making any adjustments.



Notice

Any damage done to the drive while performing these modifications will void the product warranty.

Before attempting to change components on the board, see [“Tuning Procedure” on page 56](#). Some general rules to follow when changing components are:

- A larger resistor value will increase the proportional gain, and therefore create a faster response time.
- Use non-polarized capacitors.
- A larger capacitor value will increase the integration time, and therefore create a slower response time.

A.1 Loop Tuning

Proper tuning will require careful observation of the loop response on a digital oscilloscope to find the optimal component values for the specific application.

The following are some helpful hints to make the loop tuning process easier:

- **Use a potentiometer to find the correct current loop gain value** - A potentiometer can be used to continuously adjust the gain resistance value during the tuning process. Install a potentiometer in place of the gain resistor. Adjust the potentiometer while viewing the current loop response on an oscilloscope. When the optimal response is achieved turn off the drive, remove the potentiometer, and measure the potentiometer resistance. Use the closest resistor value available. (Note: This method will not work if the optimal tuning value is beyond the range of the potentiometer).
- **If no potentiometer is available, progressively double the resistance value when tuning the current loop gain for faster results** - If the gain resistor needs to be

increased during the tuning process the fastest results are achieved by doubling the resistance from the last value tried. Use this method until overshoot is observed and then fine tune from there.

- **Safety**



Caution

Always remove power when changing components on the drive.



Caution

Float the oscilloscope and function generator grounds to avoid large ground currents.



DANGER

Decouple the motor from the load to avoid being injured by sudden motor movements.

Table A.1 lists the different components that can be used for loop tuning. Consult the drive datasheet to see which options are available for a specific drive. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls Applications Engineering for assistance in determining the PCB location of the component options for the drive model in use.

TABLE A.1 Through-Hole Tuning Component

Component	Description
Current Loop Proportional Gain Resistor	Resistor that can be changed for more precise current loop tuning.
Current Loop Integrator Capacitor	Capacitor that can be changed for more precise current loop tuning.
Velocity Loop Integrator Capacitor	Capacitor that can be changed for more precise velocity loop tuning.

A.1.1 Procedure

Before changing any components on the PCB, follow the steps in [“Tuning Procedure” on page 56](#) to determine if any additional tuning is necessary. Observe the drive output current response on an oscilloscope. If further tuning is necessary or desired, please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls before proceeding through the through following steps.

Tune the Current Loop Proportional Gain

1. Follow the steps outlined in [“Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment” on page 57](#) up through Step 8.
2. Observe the drive current response on an oscilloscope. Small step tuning is different than large step tuning, so adjust the function generator square wave amplitude so the drive outputs a current step similar to what will be expected in typical operation.
 - If the current response does not rise quickly enough to the step input command, or if it never reaches the input command, the resistance of the current loop proportional

gain resistor will need to be increased. This will increase the current loop proportional gain, and achieve a faster, more aggressive response.

- If the current response overshoots the step input command, the resistance of the current loop proportional gain resistor will need to be decreased. This will decrease the current loop proportional gain, and provide a slower, more stable response.
- 3. Finding an acceptable resistance may take a few iterations. As outlined in the previous section, using an external potentiometer will make the process easier. Remember to remove power from the drive prior to removing or adding any components to the PCB.
- 4. Use a resistance value that brings the current response right to the point of overshoot. If there is a large amount of overshoot, or if there are oscillations, decrease the resistance value until there is little or no overshoot. Depending on the application requirements, a little overshoot is acceptable, but should never exceed 10%.
- 5. When an acceptable resistance value has been found, remove power from the drive.

Tune the Current Loop Integral Gain

1. After the proportional gain resistance has been adjusted to an acceptable value, re-enable the current loop integrator capacitor.
2. Using the same function generator input command as in the previous section, apply power to the drive and observe the current loop response on an oscilloscope.
3. The current loop integrator capacitor can be changed or shorted out of the circuit. Test both settings while observing the current loop response.
 - If the current response square wave oscillates or overshoots, a larger capacitance value is necessary.
 - If the current response square wave corners are too rounded, a smaller capacitance value is necessary to sharpen the corners.
4. Although the ideal current loop response after integral gain tuning will be a critically damped square wave, the application requirements will determine what the desired response will be (i.e. how much overshoot, steady-state error, oscillation, is acceptable).

Velocity Loop Tuning The velocity loop proportional gain is adjusted by the on-board Loop Gain potentiometer. The velocity loop integral gain can be adjusted similar to the current loop integral gain (capacitance value can be changed, capacitor can be shorted out). As in tuning the current loop integral gain, use larger value capacitors to correct for overshoot or oscillation, and smaller value capacitors for a quicker response time.

B.1 Specifications Tables

TABLE B.1 Power Specifications

Description	Units	AZ_10A4xx	AZ_6A8	AZ_12A8	AZ_20A8	AZ_40A8	AZ_60A8	AZ_10A20	AZ_25A20
DC Supply Voltage Range	VDC	10-36	20-80		10-80			40-175	
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	VDC	40	88			195		193	
DC Bus Under Voltage Limit	VDC	8	18		9			36	
Maximum Peak Output Current	A	10	6	12	20	40	60	10	25
Maximum Continuous Output Current	A	5	3	6	12	20	30	6	12.5
Maximum Power Dissipation at Continuous Current	W	9	12	24	48	80	120	53	110
Minimum Load Inductance	μH	100	100			250			
Switching Frequency ¹	kHz	40	31			20.7			

1. Switching frequency for AZBE/AZBH_40A8 and AZBE/AZBH_60A8 drive models is 33 kHz. Switching frequency for AZBE/AZBH_10A20 and AZBE/AZBH_25A20 is 22 kHz.

TABLE B.2 Control Specifications

Description	AZB	AZBDC	AZBE ¹	AZBH ²	AZBD
Command Sources	± 10V Analog	PWM and Direction	± 10V Analog	± 10V Analog	± 10V Analog
Commutation Methods	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal	Trapezoidal
Control Modes	Current	Current	Current, Duty Cycle, Encoder Velocity, Tachometer Velocity	Current, Duty Cycle, Hall Velocity, Tachometer Velocity	Duty Cycle
Motors Supported	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase	Three Phase Single Phase

1. AZBE10A4xx models operate solely in Encoder Velocity mode.
2. AZBH10A4xx models operate solely in Hall Velocity mode.

TABLE B.3 Feedback Supported

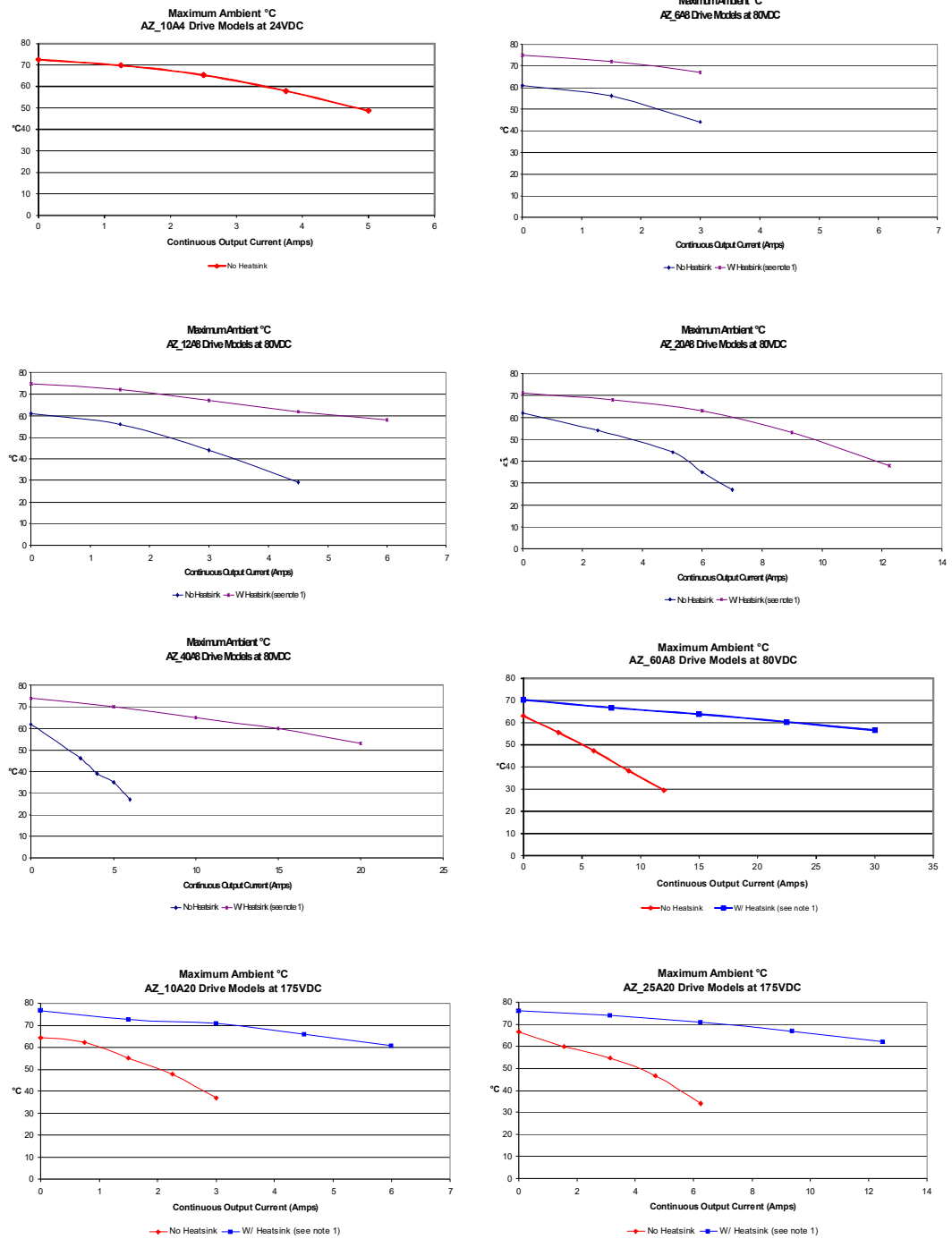
Description	AZB	AZBDC	AZBE	AZBH	AZBD
Hall Sensors for Commutation	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hall Sensors for Velocity Control				✓	
Single-Ended Incremental Encoder			✓		

TABLE B.4 Hardware Protection

Description ¹	All AZ Drives
Over Current	✓
Over Temperature	✓
Over Voltage	✓
Under Voltage	✓
Short Circuit (Phase-Phase)	✓
Short Circuit (Phase-Ground)	✓
Invalid Hall Commutation	✓

1. See "Fault Conditions and Symptoms" on page 69 for more information on hardware protection.

FIGURE B.1 PCB Mount AxCent Servo Drives Ambient Temperature Ranges



1. The heatsink used in the above tests is a 15" x 22" x 0.65" aluminum plate.

TABLE B.5 Standard Environmental Specifications

Parameter	Description
Ambient Temperature Range	See Figure B.1
Baseplate Temperature Range	See drive datasheet
Humidity	90%, non-condensing
Mechanical Shock	10g, 11ms, Half-sine
Vibration	2 - 2000 Hz @ 2.5g
Altitude	0-3000m

TABLE B.6 Physical Dimensions

Description	Units	AZ_10A4	AZ_10A4IC	AZ_6A8 / AZ_12A8	AZ_20A8 / AZ_10A20	AZ_40A8 / AZ_60A8 / AZ_25A20
Height	mm (in)	38.1 (1.50)	38.1 (1.50)	63.50 (2.50)	63.50 (2.50)	76.20 (3.00)
Width	mm (in)	38.1 (1.50)	38.1 (1.50)	50.80 (2.00)	50.80 (2.00)	50.80 (2.00)
Depth (not including pin lengths)	mm (in)	7.34 (0.29)	16.6 (0.65)	16.84 (0.66)	22.86 (0.90)	22.86 (0.90)
Weight	g (oz)	8.5 (0.3)	17 (0.6)	84.9 (3.0)	94.5 (3.3)	119.7 (4.2)
Baseplate Thickness	mm (in)	-	-	6.35 (0.25)	5.79 (0.228)	5.79 (0.228)

FIGURE B.2 AZB10A4 Mounting Dimensions (inches and [mm])

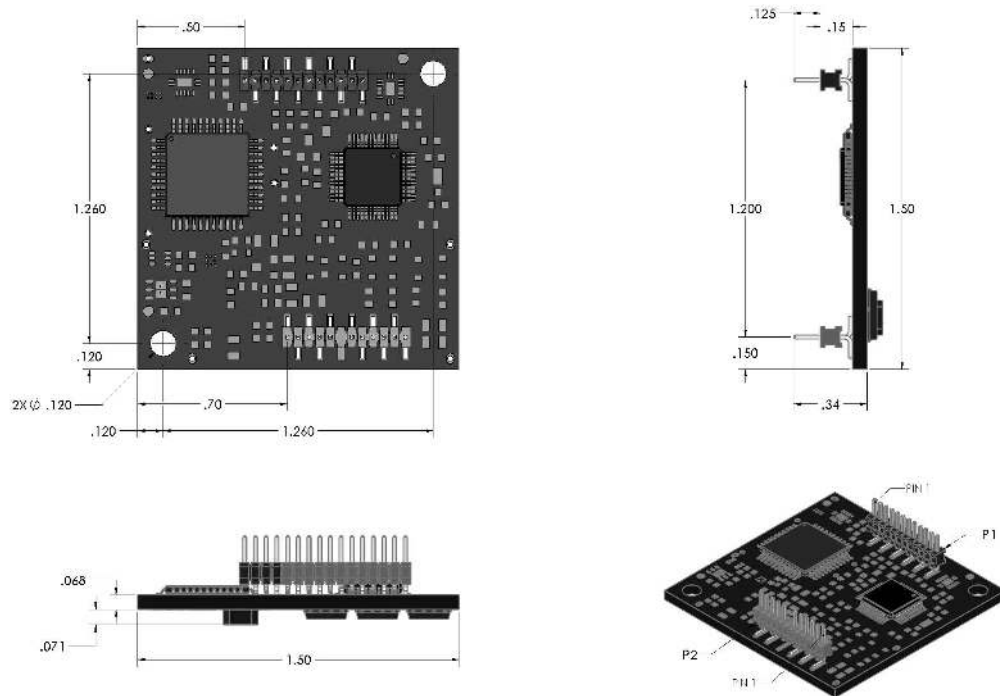


FIGURE B.3 AZB10A4IC Mounting Dimensions (inches and [mm])

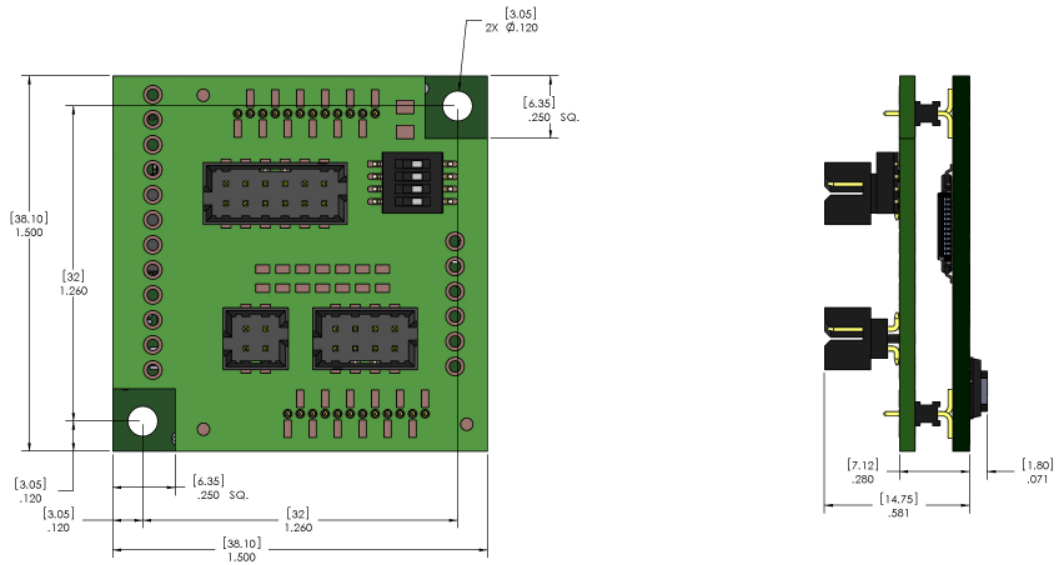


FIGURE B.4 AZBE/H/D10A4 Mounting Dimensions (inches and [mm])

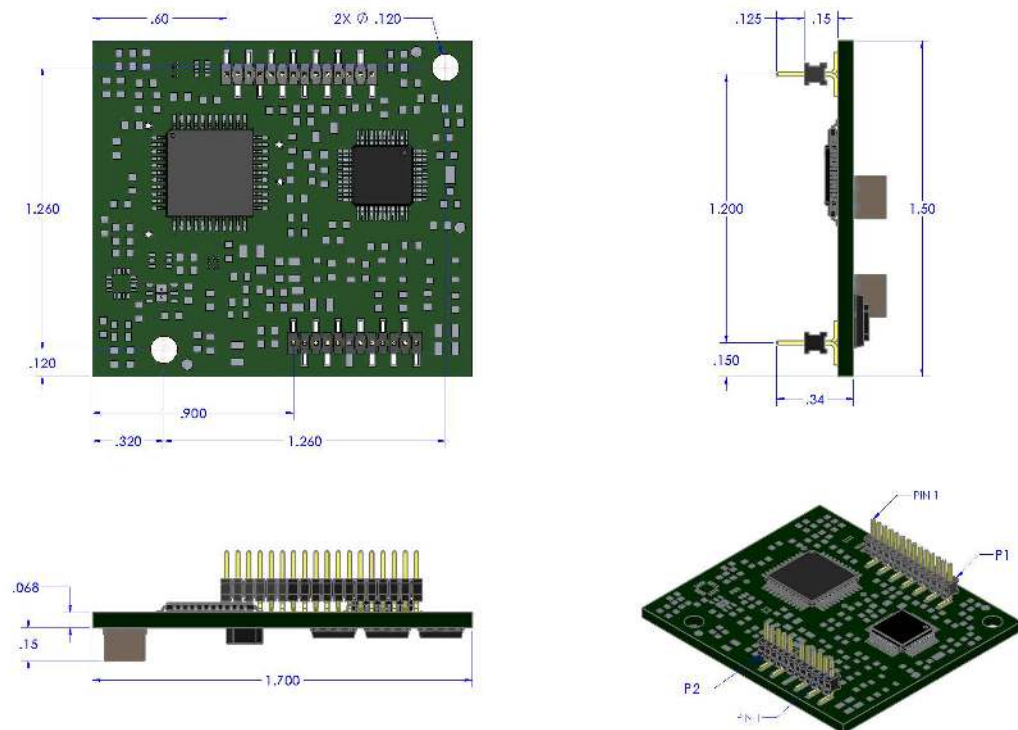


FIGURE B.5 AZ_12A8 / AZ_6A8 Mounting Dimensions (inches and [mm])

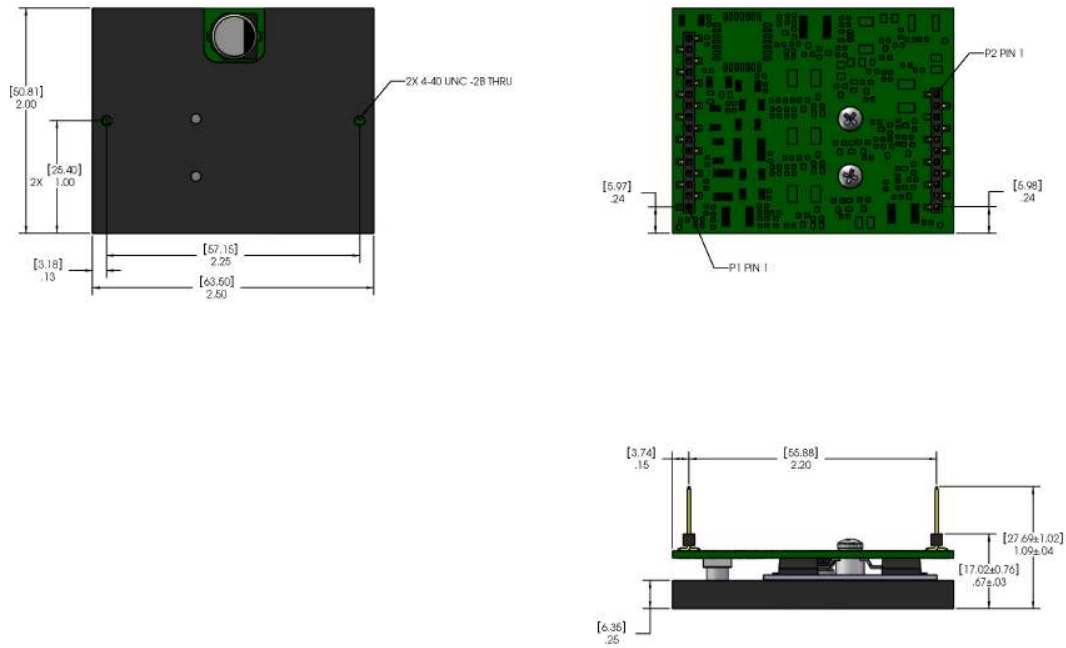


FIGURE B.6 AZ_20A8 / AZ_10A20 Mounting Dimensions (inches and [mm])

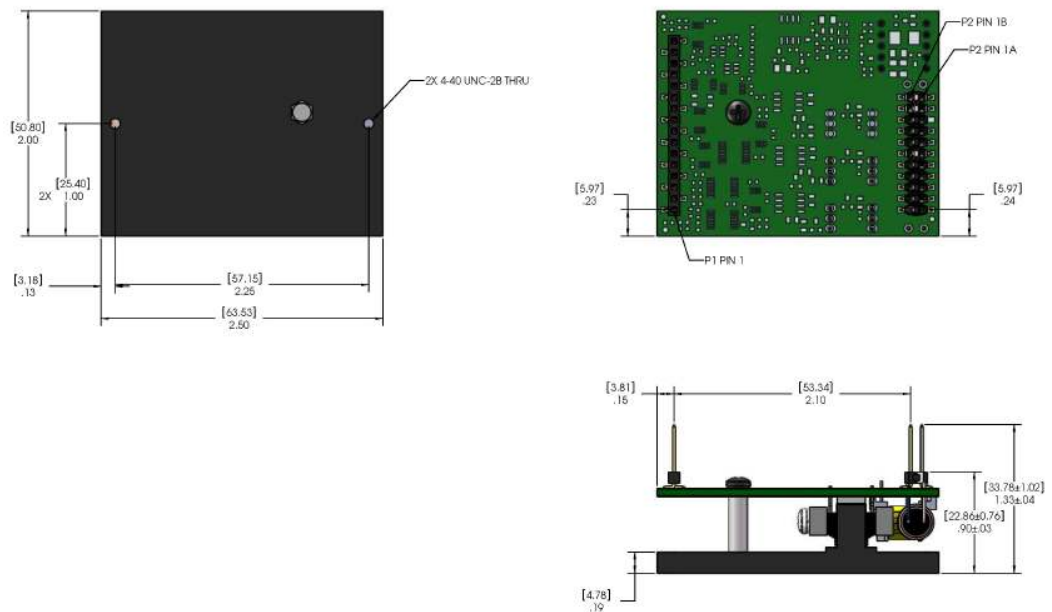
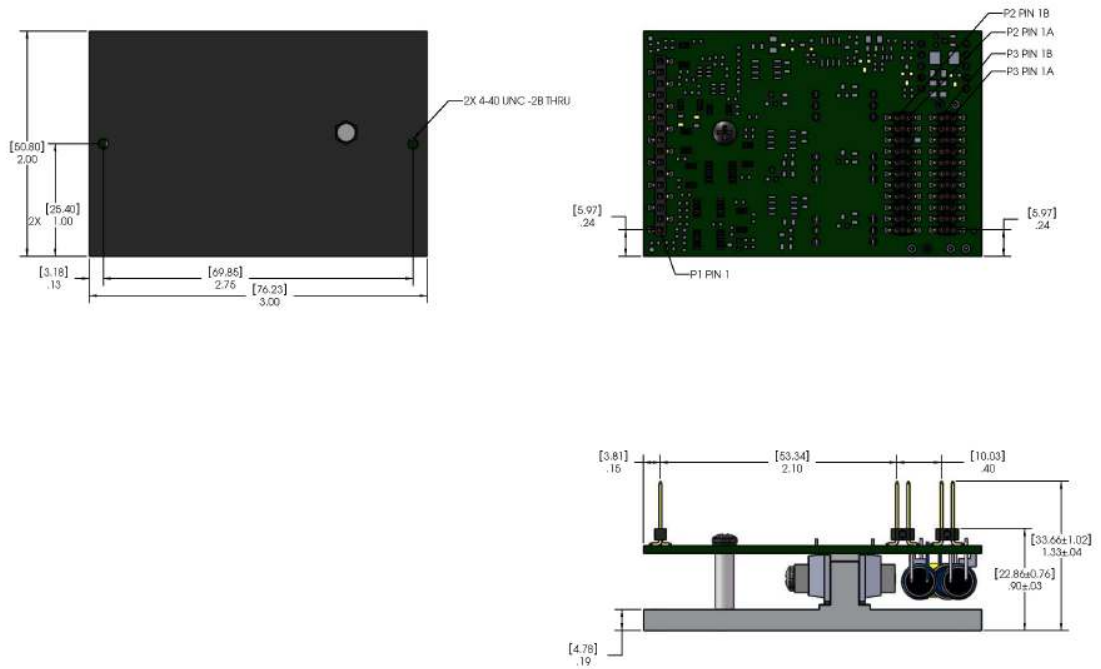


FIGURE B.7 AZ_40A8 / AZ_60A8 / AZ_25A20 Mounting Dimensions (inches and [mm])



This section discusses how to ensure optimum performance and, if necessary, get assistance from the factory.

C.1 Fault Conditions and Symptoms

An inoperative drive can indicate any of the following fault conditions:

- over-temperature
- over-voltage
- under-voltage
- short-circuits
- invalid commutation
- inhibit input
- power-on reset

All of the above fault conditions are self-reset by the drive. Once the fault condition is removed the drive will become operative again without cycling power.

To determine whether the drive is in a fault state, measure the “[Fault Output](#)” pin with a digital multimeter or voltmeter. A high at this pin will indicate that the drive is subject to one of the above fault conditions, and the drive will be disabled until the drive is no longer in a fault state. To remove the fault condition, follow the instructions in the sections below describing each possible fault state.

Over-Temperature Verify that the baseplate temperature is less than 75°C (167° F). The drive remains disabled until the temperature at the drive baseplate falls below this threshold.

Over-Voltage Shutdown

1. Check the DC power supply voltage for a value above the drive over-voltage shutdown limit. If the DC bus voltage is above this limit, check the AC power line connected to the DC power supply for proper value.
2. Check the regenerative energy absorbed during deceleration. This is done by monitoring the DC bus voltage with a voltmeter or oscilloscope. If the DC bus voltage increases above the drive over-voltage shutdown limit during deceleration or regeneration, a shunt regulator may be necessary. See “[Regeneration and Shunt Regulators](#)” on page 21 for more information.

Under-Voltage Shutdown Verify power supply voltages for minimum conditions per specifications. Also note that the drive will pull the power supply voltage down if the power supply cannot provide the required current for the drive. This could occur when high current is demanded and the power supply is pulled below the minimum operating voltage required by the drive.

Short Circuit Fault

1. Check each motor lead for shorts with respect to motor housing and power ground. If the motor is shorted it will not rotate freely when no power is applied while it is uncoupled from the load.
2. Disconnect the motor leads to see if the drive will enable without the motor connected.
3. Measure motor armature resistance between motor leads with the drive disconnected.

Invalid Hall Sensor State See the “Commutation Sequence” table in “Hall Sensors” on page 10 for valid commutation states. If the drive is disabled check the following:

1. Make sure that the 60 or 120 degree phasing jumper (JE2) is in the correct setting per motor data sheets. If driving a single phase (brushed type) motor, use the 60-degree phase setting (see “Using a Single Phase Motor” on page 11 for more information on this particular configuration).
2. Check the voltage levels for all the Hall sensor inputs.
3. Make sure all Hall Sensor lines are connected properly.

Inhibit Input Check inhibit input for correct polarity (that is, pull-to-ground to inhibit or pull-to-ground to enable). Inhibit configuration depends on JE1 on the PCB. Also, keep in mind that noise on the inhibit line could be a cause for a false inhibit signal being given to the drive.

Power-On Reset All drives have a power-on reset function to ensure that all circuitry on the board is functional prior to enabling the drive. The board will only be disabled momentarily, and will quickly enable upon power up.

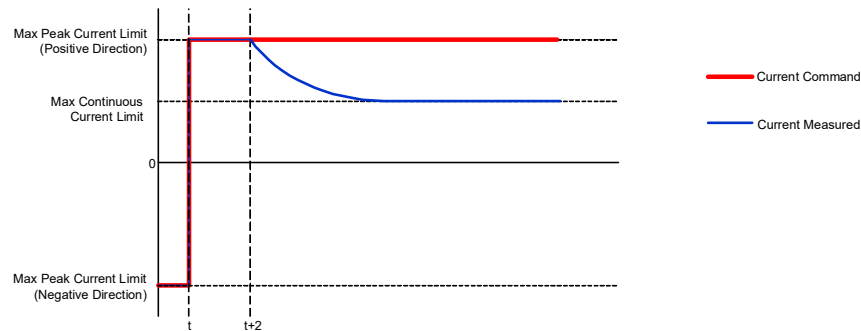
C.1.1 Overload

Verify that the minimum inductance requirement is met. If the inductance is too low it could appear like a short circuit to the drive and thus it might cause the short circuit fault to trip. Excessive heating of the drive and motor is also characteristic of the minimum inductance requirement not being met. See drive data sheets for minimum inductance requirements.

C.1.2 Current Limiting

PCB mount AxCent drives incorporate a “fold-back” circuit for protection against over-current. This “fold-back” circuit uses an approximate “ I^2t ” algorithm to protect the drive.

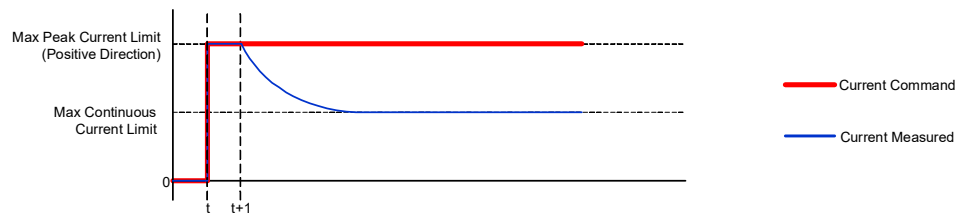
- Maximum peak current output level can be sustained for about 2 seconds.
- To actually achieve maximum peak current output for 2 seconds requires the current command to fully swing from peak in one direction to the other.

FIGURE C.1 Maximum Peak Current Fold-Back

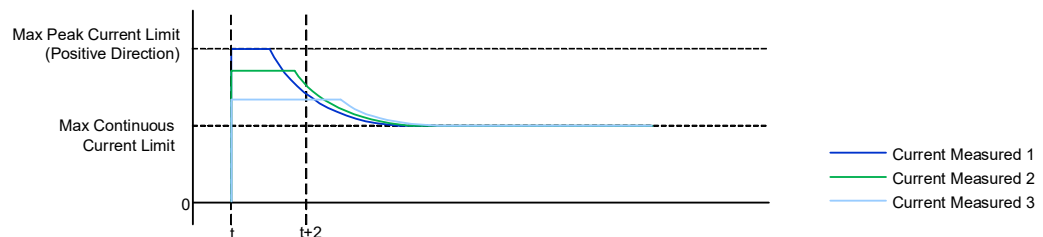
Caution

Sustained maximum current demand, when switching between positive and negative maximum current without allowing sufficient time for fold-back, will result in drive damage. Drive RMS current should be below the continuous current setting!

- For most applications, it's a rare occurrence to fully swing from peak in one direction to the other. It is more likely the drive will be commanded from zero to max peak current. Under this condition, the drive will only sustain the maximum peak current for about one second.

FIGURE C.2 Peak Current Fold-Back

- Commanding maximum peak output current starting from above zero command will also yield reduced peak current output time.
- When commanding output current less than the max peak limit, but more than the max continuous limit, the current output can be sustained for a longer time period than a maximum peak command before folding back.

FIGURE C.3 Above Continuous Current Foldback

- The closer the commanded current is to the peak current limit, the shorter the peak output time will be.

- Any command at or below the maximum continuous current limit can be achieved for as long as there are no fault conditions present.
- When the drive is configured for any of the velocity modes, the user is no longer in direct control of the current output. The current commands will be determined by the velocity loop. Though internally the current loop still functions like it is described above, it will do only what is necessary to meet the velocity demand. The current output will be heavily dependent on:
 - How tight the velocity loop is tuned
 - The load characteristics
 - The speed the motor is already turning
 - Magnitude and slope of velocity step

C.1.3 Motor Problems

A motor run-away condition is when the motor spins rapidly with no control from the command input. The most likely cause of this error comes from having the feedback element connected for positive feedback. This can be solved by changing the order that the feedback element lines are connected to the drive, changing DIP switch settings, or removing a jumper (depending on the drive model).

Another common motor issue is when the motor spins faster in one direction than in the other. This is typically caused by improper commutation, usually because the motor power wires are connected in the wrong order. Try all six combinations of connecting the motor power wires to the drive to find the correct commutation order. The proper combination of motor wires will yield smooth motion and identical speeds in both directions. Improper combinations will cause jerky motion, slow movement in one direction, and/or audible noise. As a final verification that the commutation is correct, use the Velocity Monitor Output pin to measure motor speed in both directions. This can also be caused by invalid Hall Commutation. Check to see if the drive is set for 120- or 60-degree phasing, and whether this setting corresponds to the type of motor being used (typically 120-degree for three phase motors, and 60-degree for single phase motors). See “Hall Sensors” on page 10 for more information.

For a brushless motor, if the opposite motor direction is desired for a given command input, interchange Hall 1 and Hall 3, then Motor A and Motor B.

C.1.4 Causes of Erratic Operation

- Improper grounding (for example, drive signal ground is not connected to source signal ground).
- Noisy command signal. Check for system ground loops.
- Mechanical backlash, dead-band, slippage, etc.
- Noisy inhibit input line.
- Excessive voltage spikes on bus.

C.2 Technical Support

For help from the manufacturer regarding drive set-up or operating problems, please gather the following information.

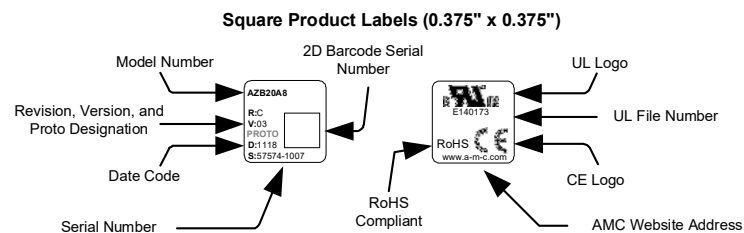
C.2.1 Drive Model Information

- DC bus voltage and range.
- Motor type, including inductance, torque constant, and winding resistance.
- Position of all DIP-switches.
- Length and make-up of all wiring and cables.
- If brushless, include Hall sensor information.
- Type of controller, plus full description of feed back devices.
- Description of problem: instability, run-away, noise, over/under shoot, or other description.
- Complete part number and serial number of the product. Original purchase order is helpful, but not necessary.

C.2.2 Product Label Description

The following is a typical example of a product label as it is found on the drive:

FIGURE C.4 Product Label



1. **Model Number:** This is the main product identifier. The model number can have a suffix designating a change from the base model.
2. **Revision Letter:** Product revision level letter ('A' is the earliest release from any model).
3. **Version:** The version number is used to track minor product upgrades with the same model number and revision letter ('01' is the earliest release of any revision).
4. **Proto Designation:** When included, indicates that the model is a prototype unit and model number will also begin with an 'X' designator.
5. **Serial Number:** The serial number consists of a 5-digit lot number followed by a 4-digit sequence number. Each product is assigned a unique serial number to track product life cycle history.
6. **Date Code:** The date code is a 4-digit number signifying the year and week of manufacture. The first two digits designate the year and the second two digits designate the week (e.g. the drive label shown would have been built in the year 2011 during the 18th week).

7. General Information: Displays applicable agency approvals, UL file reference number, compliance approvals, and EtherCAT capability. More complete product information is available by following the listed website.

C.3 Warranty Returns and Factory Help

Seller warrants that all items will be delivered free from defects in material and workmanship and in conformance with contractual requirements. The Seller makes no other warranties, express or implied and specifically NO WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

The Seller's exclusive liability for breach of warranty shall be limited to repairing or replacing at the Seller's option items returned to Seller's plant at Buyer's expense within one year of the date of delivery. The Seller's liability on any claim of any kind, including negligence, for loss or damage arising out of, connected with or resulting from this order, or from the performance or breach thereof or from the manufacture, sale, delivery, resale, repair or use of any item or services covered by or furnished under this order shall in no case exceed the price allocable to the item or service or part thereof which gives rise to the claim and in the event Seller fails to manufacture or deliver items other than standard products that appear in Seller's catalog. Seller's exclusive liability and Buyer's exclusive remedy shall be release of the Buyer from the obligation to pay the purchase price. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SELLER BE LIABLE FOR SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

Buyer will take all appropriate measures to advise users and operators of the products delivered hereunder of all potential dangers to persons or property, which may be occasioned by such use. Buyer will indemnify and hold Seller harmless from all claims of any kind for injuries to persons and property arising from use of the products delivered hereunder. Buyer will, at its sole cost, carry liability insurance adequate to protect Buyer and Seller against such claims.

All returns (warranty or non-warranty) require that you first obtain a Return Material Authorization (RMA) number from the factory.

Request an RMA number by:

web	www.a-m-c.com/download/form/form_rma.html
telephone	(805) 389-1935
fax	(805) 389-1165

A			
Agency Compliances	ii		
Altitude	25		
Ambient Temperature Range	25, 64		
Attention Symbols	iii		
AZ_10A20			
Dimensions	67		
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_10A4			
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_12A8			
Dimensions	67		
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_20A8			
Dimensions	67		
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_25A20			
Dimensions	68		
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_40A8			
Dimensions	68		
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_60A8			
Dimensions	68		
Pin Layout	13		
AZ_6A8			
Dimensions	67		
Pin Layout	13		
AZB	14		
Block Diagram	14		
Pinout	15		
AZB10A4IC	37		
AZBDC	14		
Block Diagram	14		
Pinout	15		
AZBE	14		
Block Diagram	14		
Pinout	15		
AZBH	14		
Block Diagram	14		
Pinout	15		
B			
Baseplate Temperature Range	25		
Brushed Motors	6		
Brushless Motors	6		
Brushless Servo System	6		
C			
Central Point Grounding	30		
Command Sources	7, 63		
Commutation Methods	7, 63		
Commutation Phasing	11		
Commutation Sequence Table	11		
Company Website	ii		
Continuous Output Current	7, 63		
Continuous Regeneration	24		
Control Modes	7, 8–9, 63		
Current (Torque)	8		
Duty Cycle (Open Loop)	8		
Encoder Velocity	9		
Hall Velocity	9		
Tachometer Velocity	9		
Control Specifications	7, 63		
Current (Torque)	8		
Current (Torque) Mode Test	52–55		
Current Limiting	70		
Current Loop Gain	57		
Current Loop Integrator	58		
CURRENT MONITOR	15		
Current Monitor Output	49		
CURRENT REF OUT	15		
Current Reference Output	49		
D			
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	7, 63		
DC Bus Under Voltage Limit	7, 63		
DC Power Input	42		
DC Supply Voltage Range	7, 63		
Differential Inputs	32		
DIP Switch Settings	10		
DIR IN	15		
Drive Datasheet	4		
Duty Cycle Mode	8		
Dwell Time	17		
E			
Encoder	10, 63		
Encoder Feedback	12		
Encoder Inputs	44		
Encoder Velocity Mode	9		
Environment			
Shock/Vibration	27		
Environmental Specifications	25, 65		
Error Signal	10		
External Filter Card	18, 32		
F			
Fault Conditions	69–70		
Inhibit Input	70		
Invalid Hall Commutation	70		
Over-Temperature	69		
Over-Voltage Shutdown	69		
Power-on Reset	70		
Short Circuit Fault	70		
Under-Voltage Shutdown	70		
FAULT OUT	15		
Fault Output	50		
Feedback Polarity	10		
Feedback Supported	10–12, 63		
Encoder	12		
Hall Sensors	10		
Tachometer	12		
Feedback Wires	33		
Fold-back	70		
Frequency Factor	24		
G			
Ground Loops	30, 33		
Grounding	30–31		
Controller Chassis	30		
Drive Case	30		
Motor Chassis	30		
PCB Interface Chassis	30		
Power Supply Chassis	30		
Shielding	31		
H			
Hall Sensor Inputs	44		
Hall Sensor Power Supply	50		
Hall Sensors	10, 53, 63		
Hall Velocity Mode	9		
Hand Soldering	39		
Hardware Protection	63		
HIGH VOLTAGE	15		
Humidity	25		
I			
Impedance	32		
Inhibit Input	50, 69, 70		
Input Reference Wires	33		
Input/Output Pin Functions	49–51		
Current Monitor	49		

Current Reference49
 Fault.....50
 Hall Power.....50
 Inhibit.....50
 Tachometer51
 Velocity Monitor51
 Interface Circuitry Examples42
 Interference Coupling31
 Capacitive.....31
 Electromagnetic.....31
 Magnetic.....31
 Voltage Drops.....32
 Invalid Commutation69
 Invalid Hall Commutation.....70
 Isolated Power Supply21
 Isolation21

L

Linear Motor Equation.....17
 Lock-out/tag-out Procedures.....1
 Loop Gain Potentiometer.....51

M

Mating Connectors38
 Max. Power Dissipation7, 63
 Mechanical Shock25
 Minimum Load Inductance.....7, 63
 Model Information73
 Model Mask.....7
 Motion Control System.....5
 Motor54
 Motor "Run-Away".....10
 Motor Back-EMF Voltage18
 Motor Current17, 19
 Motor Current Frequency18
 Motor Force.....18
 Motor Inductance3, 18
 Overload70
 Motor Power Output43
 Motor Problems.....72
 Motor Resistance18
 Motor Torque Constant.....17
 Motor Voltage.....17, 19
 Motor Wires32
 Motors Supported7, 63
 Mounting.....35-40
 Mounting Cards35
 PCB Mounting Options.....38
 Mating Connectors38
 Soldering39
 Screw Mounting.....39
 Mounting Cards35
 Mounting Diagrams.....67
 Move Profile16

N

Negative Feedback.....10
 Noise.....31
 Nominal Power Supply Voltage19
 Non-AZ Drive Replacement33

O

Offset Input46
 Offset Potentiometer51
 Operation49
 Overload70
 Over-Temperature69
 Over-Voltage69
 Over-Voltage Shutdown69

P

Part Numbering Structure7
 PCB Circuitry Design Examples
 Tachometer Input46
 PCB Design41
 Circuitry Examples42
 DC Power42
 Encoder44
 Hall Sensors44
 Motor Power43
 Offset Input46
 Trace Routing41
 Trace Width.....41
 PCB Mounting Options38
 PE Ground30
 Peak Current Fold-back.....70
 Peak Output Current7, 63
 Peak Torque17
 Physical Dimensions65
 Pin Layout13
 AZ_10A2013
 AZ_10A413
 AZ_12A813
 AZ_20A813
 AZ_25A2013
 AZ_40A813
 AZ_60A813
 AZ_6A813
 Pinouts.....15
 Signal Connectors.....15
 Positive Feedback10
 Potentiometer Tool.....51
 Potentiometers51
 POWER GROUND15
 Power Ground.....31
 Power Specifications7, 63
 Power Supply Capacitance..3, 24, 32
 Power Supply Current.....20
 Power Supply Output Current 19, 24
 Power Supply Wires32
 Power-on Reset.....69, 70
 Product Label.....73
 Products Covered7
 PWM Current Control Circuit5
 PWM IN15

R

REF IN, -15, 33
 REF IN, +15, 33
 Regeneration.....21, 22
 Continuous24
 Returns74
 Revision Historyiv

RMS Torque17

S

Safety1-3
 Scaling Factor9
 Screw Mounting.....39
 Selection and Sizing.....16-25
 Selective Wave Soldering39
 Servo Drive Theory.....5-6
 Shielding.....31, 32
 Shock/Vibration27
 Short Circuit Fault.....70
 Short-Circuit.....69
 Shunt Regulator20, 21
 SIGNAL GROUND15
 Signal Ground.....31
 Single Phase Motors6
 Soldering39
 Specifications Tables63-67
 Switching Frequency7, 63
 System Requirements.....16-27
 System Voltage Requirement.....17

T

Tachometer Feedback12
 Tachometer Input46, 51
 Tachometer Velocity Mode9
 Technical Support.....73
 Three Phase Motors6
 Torque.....17
 Trace Routing.....41
 Trace Width.....41
 Troubleshooting69-74
 Tuning.....60
 Twisted Pair Wires32

U

Under-Voltage69
 Under-Voltage Shutdown70

V

V HALL OUT15
 Velocity Control10, 63
 Velocity Monitor Output.....51
 Vibration.....25
 Voltage Ripple24

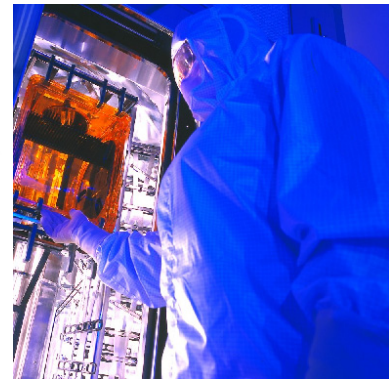
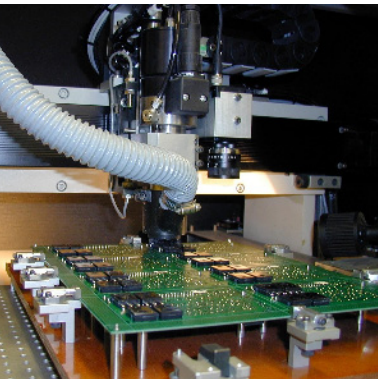
W

Warning Symbols..... iii
 Warranty Info.....74
 Warranty Returns74
 Wave Soldering39
 Wire Diameter32
 Wire Gauge32
 Wiring.....31-34
 Feedback Wires.....33
 Input Reference Wires.....33
 Motor Wires32
 Power Supply Wires32
 Wire Gauge.....32

PCB Mount AxCent™ Drives
Hardware Installation Manual
MNALAZIN-15



3805 Calle Tecate • Camarillo, CA 93012-5068
Tel: (805) 389-1935 Fax: (805) 389-1165 www.a-m-c.com



Everything's possible.

M/V™ Analog Motor Controllers

for Electric Mobility and Vehicular Applications

Hardware

Installation Manual



Preface

ADVANCED Motion Controls constantly strives to improve all of its products. We review the information in this document regularly and we welcome any suggestions for improvement. We reserve the right to modify equipment and documentation without prior notice.

For the most recent software, the latest revisions of this manual, and copies of compliance and declarations of conformity, visit the company's website at www.a-m-c.com. Otherwise, contact the company directly at:

ADVANCED Motion Controls • 3805 Calle Tecate Camarillo, CA • 93012-5068 USA

Agency Compliances

The company holds original documents for the following:

- UL 508c, file number E140173
- Electromagnetic Compatibility, EMC Directive - 2014/30/EU
EN61000-6-2:2005
EN61000-6-4:2007/A1:2011
- Electrical Safety, Low Voltage Directive - 2014/35/EU
EN 60204-1:2006/A1:2009
- Reduction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS III), 2015/863/EU

Trademarks

ADVANCED Motion Controls™, the combined isosceles trapezoid/right triangle logo, **DIGIFLEX®**, **DIGIFLEX® Performance™**, DriveWare™, and M/V™ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of *ADVANCED* Motion Controls in the United States and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Related Documentation

- Product datasheet specific for your drive, available for download at www.a-m-c.com.

Attention Symbols

The following symbols are used throughout this document to draw attention to important operating information, special instructions, and cautionary warnings. The section below outlines the overall directive of each symbol and what type of information the accompanying text is relaying.



Note

Note - Pertinent information that clarifies a process, operation, or ease-of-use preparations regarding the product.



Notice

Notice - Required instruction necessary to ensure successful completion of a task or procedure.



Caution

Caution - Instructs and directs you to avoid damaging equipment.



Warning

Warning - Instructs and directs you to avoid harming yourself.



DANGER

Danger - Presents information you must heed to avoid serious injury or death.

Revision History

Document ID	Revision #	Date	Changes
MNALMVIN-01	1	12/2011	Analog Electric Mobility Product Family Hardware Installation Manual First Release
MNALMVIN-02	2	8/2012	- Added 200A100 Power Module Information - Added 100C200 Power Module Information

© 2015 *ADVANCED* Motion Controls. All rights reserved.



Contents

1 Safety **1**

1.1 General Safety Overview	1
-----------------------------------	---

2 Products and System Requirements **4**

2.1 M/V™ Motor Controllers Family Overview	4
Drive Datasheet	4
2.1.1 Products Covered	5
2.2 Servo Drive Basics and Theory	6
2.2.1 Three Phase (Brushless) Motor Controllers	7
2.3 Command Inputs	8
2.4 Feedback Specifications	9
2.4.1 Feedback Polarity	9
2.4.2 Incremental Encoder	9
2.4.3 Hall Sensors	10
2.4.4 Tachometer	11
2.5 Modes of Operation	11
2.5.1 Current (Torque) Mode	11
2.5.2 Duty Cycle (Open Loop) Mode	12
2.5.3 Hall Velocity Mode	12
2.5.4 Encoder Velocity Mode	12
2.5.5 Tachometer Velocity Mode	13
2.5.6 Voltage Mode	13
2.5.7 IR Compensation Mode	13
2.6 System Requirements	14
2.6.1 Motor Controller Selection and Sizing	14
Motor Current and Voltage	14

Motor Inductance	16
2.6.2 Power Supply Selection and Sizing	17
Power Supply Current and Voltage	17
Isolation	19
Regeneration and Shunt Regulators	19
Voltage Ripple	22
2.6.3 Environmental Specifications	23
Ambient Temperature Range	23
Shock/Vibrations	24

3 Integration in the Servo System **25**

3.1 LVD Requirements	25
3.2 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements	26
General	26
Analog Input Drives	26
PWM Input Drives	26
MOSFET Switching Drives	26
IGBT Switching Drives	26
Fitting of AC Power Filters	26
3.2.1 Ferrite Suppression Core Set-up	27
3.2.2 Inductive Filter Cards	27
3.3 Grounding	28
3.4 Wiring	29
3.4.1 Wire Gauge	29
3.4.2 Motor Wiring	30
3.4.3 Power Supply Wiring	31
3.4.4 Feedback Wiring	32
Hall Sensors	32
Incremental Encoder	32
Tachometer	33
3.4.5 Input Reference Wiring	33
Analog Input	33
3.4.6 Command Wiring	34
3.4.7 Keypad Input	35
3.4.8 Brake Output	35
3.4.9 Fault Output	35
3.5 Mounting	36
3.6 Connectors	36

4 Operation **37**

4.1 Initial Setup and Features	37
4.1.1 Pin Function Details	37
Current Monitor Output (AB models)	37
DC Bus Current Monitor Output (AVB models)	37
Forward / Reverse Inputs	38
Inhibit Input	38
Speed/Command Limit Input	38
Fault Output	38
Low Voltage Power Supply Outputs	38
Velocity Monitor Output	39
4.1.2 Potentiometer Function Details	39
Potentiometer Tool	40
4.1.3 Switch Function Details	40
4.1.4 Tachometer Input Gain Scaling	41
4.1.5 Current Limiting Procedure	42
4.1.6 Drive Set-up Instructions	43
Brushed Motor Setup	44
4.1.7 Tuning Procedure	44
Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment	45
Current Loop Integrator Adjustment	47
Voltage or Velocity Loop Tuning	47
Analog Position Loop	48

A Through-hole Components **49**

A.1 Through-Hole Component Procedures	49
A.1.1 Procedure	51
Tune the Current Loop Integral Gain	51
Velocity Loop Integral Gain Tuning	51

B Specifications **52**

B.1 Specifications Tables	52
---------------------------------	----

C Troubleshooting **55**

C.1 Fault Conditions and Symptoms	55
Over-Temperature	55
Over-Voltage Shutdown	55
Under-Voltage Shutdown	56
Short Circuit Fault	56
Invalid Hall Sensor State	56
Inhibit Input	56
Power-On Reset	56
C.1.1 Overload	56
C.1.2 Current Limiting	57
C.1.3 Motor Problems	58
C.1.4 Causes of Erratic Operation	58
C.2 Technical Support	59
C.2.1 Product Label Description	59
C.2.2 Drive System and Application Information	59
C.3 Warranty Returns and Factory Help	60

Index I

1 Safety

This section discusses characteristics of your analog servo drive to raise your awareness of potential risks and hazards. The severity of consequences ranges from frustration of performance, through damage to equipment, injury or death. These consequences, of course, can be avoided by good design and proper installation into your mechanism.

1.1 General Safety Overview

In order to install an analog drive into a servo system, you must have a thorough knowledge and understanding of basic electronics, computers and mechanics as well as safety precautions and practices required when dealing with the possibility of high voltages or heavy, strong equipment.

Observe your facility's lock-out/tag-out procedures so that work can proceed without residual power stored in the system or unexpected movements by the machine.



Notice

You must install and operate motion control equipment so that you meet all applicable safety requirements. Ensure that you identify the relevant standards and comply with them. Failure to do so may result in damage to equipment and personal injury.

Read this entire manual prior to attempting to install or operate the drive. Become familiar with practices and procedures that allow you to operate these drives safely and effectively. You are responsible for determining the suitability of this product for the intended application. The manufacturer is neither responsible nor liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the inappropriate use of this product.



Caution

Over current protective devices recognized by an international safety agency must be installed in line before the servo drive. These devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the device installation instructions and the specifications of the servo drive (taking into consideration inrush currents, etc.). Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over current protection in the end user's equipment.



Notice

High-performance motion control equipment can move rapidly with very high forces. Unexpected motion may occur especially during product commissioning. Keep clear of any operational machinery and never touch them while they are working.



Warning

Keep clear of all exposed power terminals (motor, DC Bus, shunt, DC power, transformer) when power is applied to the equipment. Follow these safety guidelines:

- Always turn off the main power and allow sufficient time for complete discharge before making any connections to the drive.
- Do not rotate the motor shaft without power. The motor acts as a generator and will charge up the power supply capacitors through the drive. Excessive speeds may cause over-voltage breakdown in the power output stage. Note that a drive having an internal power converter that operates from the high voltage supply will become operative.
- Do not short the motor leads at high motor speeds. When the motor is shorted, its own generated voltage may produce a current flow as high as 10 times the drive current. The short itself may not damage the drive but may damage the motor. If the connection arcs or opens while the motor is spinning rapidly, this high voltage pulse flows back into the drive (due to stored energy in the motor inductance) and may damage the drive.
- Do not make any connections to any internal circuitry. Only connections to designated connectors are allowed.
- Do not make any connections to the drive while power is applied.



Caution

- Do not reverse the power supply leads! Severe damage will result!
- If using relays or other means to disconnect the motor leads, be sure the drive is disabled before reconnecting the motor leads to the drive. Connecting the motor leads to the drive while it is enabled can generate extremely high voltage spikes which will damage the drive.



Caution

Use sufficient capacitance!

Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) drives require a capacitor on the high voltage supply to store energy during the PWM switching process. Insufficient power supply capacitance causes problems particularly with high inductance motors. During braking much of the stored mechanical energy is fed back into the power supply and charges its output capacitor to a higher voltage. If the charge reaches the drive's over-voltage shutdown point, output current and braking will cease. At that time energy stored in the motor inductance continues to flow through diodes in the drive to further charge the power supply capacitance. The voltage rise depends upon the power supply capacitance, motor speed, and inductance.



Caution

Make sure minimum inductance requirements are met!

Pulse Width modulation (PWM) servo drives deliver a pulsed output that requires a minimum amount of load inductance to ensure that the DC motor current is properly filtered. The minimum inductance values for different drive types are shown in the individual data sheet specifications. If the drive is operated below its maximum rated voltage, the minimum load inductance requirement may be reduced. Most servo-motors have enough winding inductance. Some types of motors (e.g. "basket-wound", "pancake", etc.) do not have a conventional iron core rotor, so the winding inductance is usually less than 50 μ H.

If the motor inductance value is less than the minimum required for the selected drive, use an external filter card.

2 Products and System Requirements

This chapter is intended as a guide and general overview in selecting, installing, and operating an M/V™ series motor controller. Contained within are instructions on system integration, wiring, setup, and standard operating methods.

2.1 M/V™ Motor Controllers Family Overview

M/V motor controllers are fully functional, four-quadrant servo drives designed for either permanent magnet brushed or brushless motors for use in electric mobility and vehicular applications. M/V motor controllers provide high power from battery supplies, provide a variety of control and feedback options, and accept an analog command source. A digital motion controller can be used to command and interact with M/V drives, and a number of input/output pins are available for parameter observation and drive configuration.

TABLE 2.1 Standard M/V Series Part Numbers

	Max Voltage Peak Current	60V 250A	80V 200A	175V 125A	175V 100A
Command Type	0-5V Analog, 0-5kΩ	AVB250A060	AVB200A100	AVB125A200	AVB100C200
	±10V Analog	AB250A060	AB200A100	AB125A200	AB100C200

Drive Datasheet Each M/V motor controller has a separate datasheet that contains important product-specific information on the modes and features available, including the functional block diagram of the specific drive's operation. The datasheet is to be used in conjunction with this manual for system design and installation.

2.1.1 Products Covered

The products covered in this manual adhere to the following part numbering structure. However, additional features and/or options are readily available for OEM's with sufficient ordering volume. Feel free to contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for further information.

FIGURE 2.1 M/V Product Family Part Numbering Structure

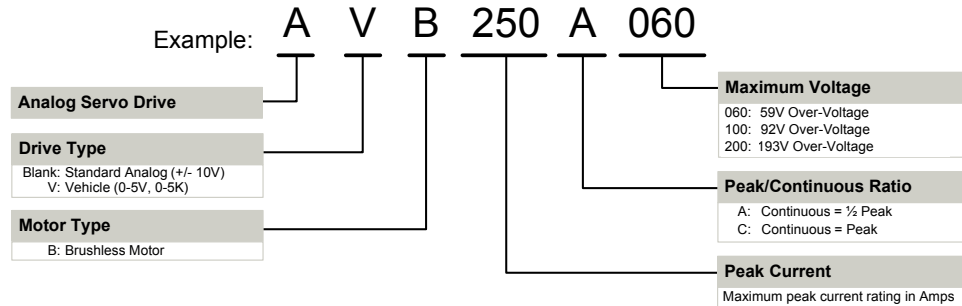


TABLE 2.2 Power Specifications

Description	Units	A_250A060	A_200A100	A_125A200	A_100C200
DC Supply Voltage Range	VDC	20-54	20-80	40-175	40-175
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	VDC	59	92	190	190
DC Bus Under Voltage Limit	VDC	18	16	36	36
Logic Supply Voltage (Keyswitch) - AVB models only	VDC	20-54	20-80	40-175	40-175
Maximum Peak Output Current ¹	A	250	200	125	100
Maximum Continuous Output Current	A	150	125	80	100
Maximum Continuous Output Power	W	7695	9500	13300	16625
Maximum Power Dissipation at Continuous Current	W	405	500	700	875
Internal Bus Capacitance	μF	12600	6000	3840	3840
Minimum Load Inductance ²	μH	200	250	300	300
Switching Frequency	kHz	14.5	14.6	14.5	14.6
Maximum Output PWM Duty Cycle	%	100	100	100	100

1. Maximum duration of zero-to-peak current commands is ~10 seconds for AVB drives and ~5 seconds for AB drives. Maximum duration of peak-to-peak current commands is ~10 seconds for AB drives. Peak-to-peak current commands should not be performed with AVB drives.
2. Lower inductance is acceptable for bus voltages well below maximum. Use external inductance to meet requirements.

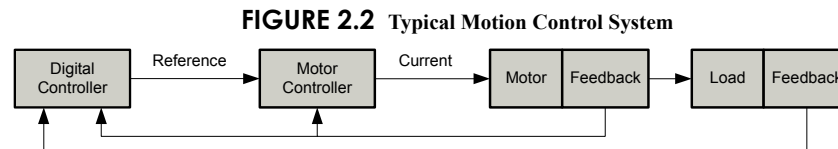
TABLE 2.3 Control Specifications

Control Specifications		
Description	AVB	AB
Command Sources	0-5V Analog, 0-5kΩ	±10V Analog
Commutation Methods	Trapezoidal	
Control Modes	Current, Voltage, IR Compensation, Duty Cycle (Open Loop), Hall Velocity, Encoder Velocity, Tachometer Velocity	
Motors Supported	Three Phase Single Phase	

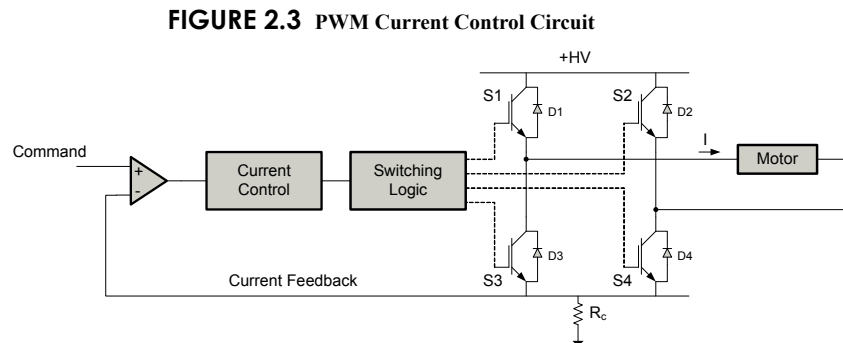
2.2 Servo Drive Basics and Theory

Motor controllers are used extensively in motion control systems where precise control of position and/or velocity is required. The motor controller transmits the low-energy reference signals from the digital motion controller into high-energy signals (motor voltage and current). The reference signals can be either analog or digital, with a ± 10 VDC signal being the most common. The signal can represent either a motor torque or velocity demand.

Figure 2.2 shows the components typically used in a servo system (i.e. a feedback system used to control position, velocity, and/or acceleration). The digital motion controller contains the algorithms to close the desired servo loops and also handles machine interfacing (inputs/outputs, terminals, etc.). The motor controller represents the electronic power converter that drives the motor according to the digital motion controller reference signals. The motor (which can be of the brushed or brushless type, rotary, or linear) is the actual electromagnetic actuator, which generates the forces required to move the load. Feedback elements are mounted on the motor and/or load in order to close the servo loop.



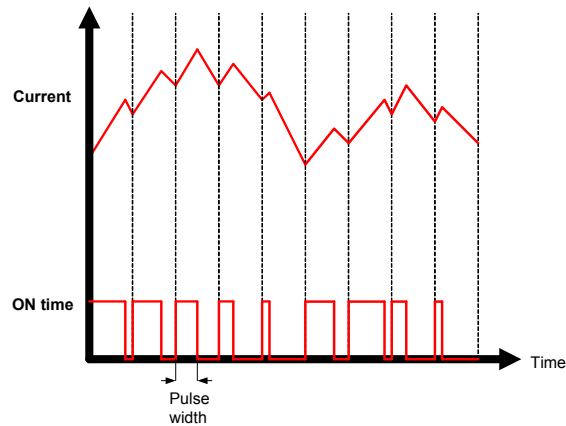
Although there exist many ways to "amplify" electrical signals, pulse width modulation (PWM) is by far the most efficient and cost-effective approach. At the basis of a PWM motor controller is a current control circuit that controls the output current by varying the duty cycle of the output power stage (fixed frequency, variable duty cycle). Figure 2.3 shows a typical setup for a single phase load.



S1, S2, S3, and S4 are power devices (MOSFET or IGBT) that can be switched on or off. D1, D2, D3, and D4 are diodes that guarantee current continuity. The bus voltage is depicted by +HV. The resistor R_c is used to measure the actual output current. For electric motors, the load is typically inductive due to the windings used to generate electromagnetic fields. The current can be regulated in both directions by activating the appropriate switches. When switch S1 and S4 (or S2 and S3) are activated, current will flow in the positive (or negative) direction and increase. When switch S1 is off and switch S4 is on (or S2 off and S3 on) current will flow in the positive (or negative) direction and decrease (via one of the diodes). The switch "ON" time is determined by the difference between the current demand and the actual current. The

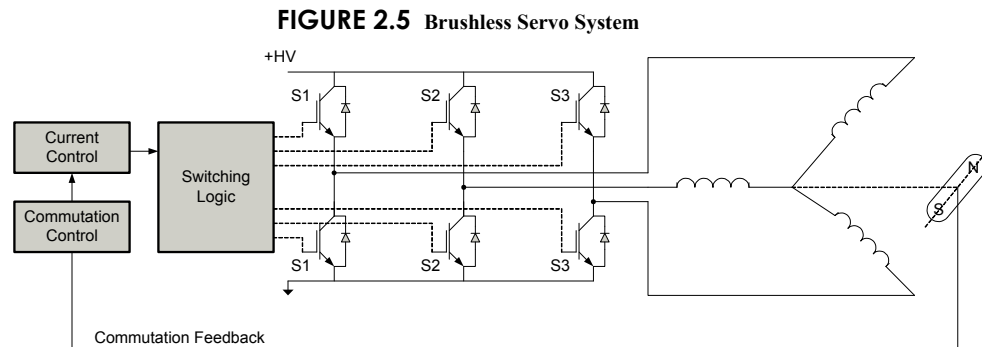
current control circuit will compare both signals every time interval (typically 50 μsec or less) and activate the switches accordingly (this is done by the switching logic circuit, which also performs basic protection functions). [Figure 2.4](#) shows the relationship between the pulse width (ON time) and the current pattern. The current rise time will depend on the bus voltage (+HV) and the load inductance. Therefore, certain minimum load inductance requirements are necessary depending on the bus voltage.

FIGURE 2.4 Output Current and Duty Cycle Relationship



2.2.1 Three Phase (Brushless) Motor Controllers

Three Phase (Brushless) motor controllers are used with brushless servo motors. These motors typically have a three-phase winding on the stator and permanent magnets on the rotor. Brushless motors require commutation feedback for proper operation (the commutators and brushes perform this function on brush type motors). This feedback consists of rotor magnetic field orientation information, supplied either by magnetic field sensors (Hall Effect sensors) or position sensors (encoder or resolver). Brushless motors have better power density ratings than brushed motors because heat is generated in the stator, resulting in a shorter thermal path to the outside environment. [Figure 2.5](#) shows a typical system configuration.



2.3 Command Inputs

An analog reference signal can be used to command the motor controller by adjusting the motor current, voltage, or speed, depending on the mode of operation. [Table 2.4](#) below outlines the command types available for the M/V series. An on-board low voltage output supply (3mA, 0-5V output for AVB models; 3mA, $\pm 10V$ output for AB models) is provided for use with an external potentiometer. On AVB models, DIP switch bank SW2 selects between a 2-wire or 3-wire potentiometer configuration, Single-Ended or Wigwag, and Standard or Inverted command inputs (see [“Switch Function Details”](#) on page 40 for more information).

TABLE 2.4 Analog Command Types

		AVB	AB
Standard Single-Ended (0-5k Ω potentiometer; neutral point 0k Ω)		✓	
Inverted Single-Ended (5-0k Ω potentiometer; neutral point 5k Ω)		✓	
Wigwag (0-5k Ω potentiometer; neutral point 2.5k Ω)		✓	
Inverted Wigwag (0-5k Ω potentiometer; neutral point 2.5k Ω)		✓	
Standard Single-Ended (0-5V analog command range; neutral point 0V)		✓	
Inverted Single-Ended (5-0V analog command range; neutral point 5V)		✓	
Wigwag (0-5V analog command range; neutral point 2.5V)		✓	
Inverted Wigwag (5-0V analog command range; neutral point 2.5V)		✓	
Standard Differential (50k Ω potentiometer; $\pm 10V$ analog command range)			✓
Standard Single-Ended ($\pm 10V$ analog command range)			✓
Standard Differential ($\pm 10V$ analog command range)			✓

For information on the recommended wiring for an analog input command, see [“Command Wiring”](#) on page 34.

2.4 Feedback Specifications

There are a number of different feedback options available for M/V motor controllers. The feedback component can be any device capable of generating a voltage signal proportional to current, velocity, position, or any parameter of interest. Such signals can be provided directly by a potentiometer or indirectly by other feedback devices such as Hall Sensors or Encoders. These latter devices must have their signals converted to a DC voltage, a task performed by the drive circuitry. Consult a specific datasheet to see which feedback devices are available for that model.

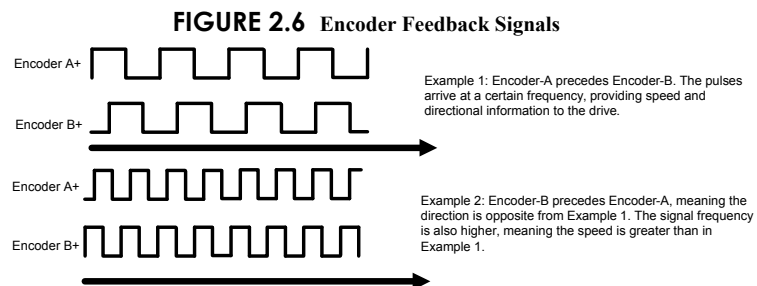
2.4.1 Feedback Polarity

The feedback element must be connected for *negative* feedback. This will cause a difference between the command signal and the feedback signal, called the *error signal*. The drive compares the feedback signal to the command signal to produce the required output to the load by continually reducing the error signal to zero. This becomes important when using an incremental encoder or Hall sensors, as connecting these feedback elements for positive feedback will lead to a motor "run-away" condition. In a case where the feedback lines are connected to the drive with the wrong polarity in either Hall Velocity or Encoder Velocity Mode, the motor controller will attempt to correct the "error signal" by applying more command to the motor. With the wrong feedback polarity, this will result in a positive feedback run-away condition. To correct this, either change the order that the feedback lines are connected to the drive, or consult the M/V motor controller datasheet for the appropriate switch on the DIP switch bank that reverses the internal feedback velocity polarity. See "Switch Function Details" on page 40 for more information on DIP switch settings.

2.4.2 Incremental Encoder

Analog motor controllers that use encoder feedback utilize two single-ended incremental encoder inputs for velocity control. The encoder provides incremental position feedback that can be extrapolated into very precise velocity information. The encoder signals are read as "pulses" that the motor controller uses to essentially keep track of the motor's position and direction of rotation. Based on the speed and order in which these pulses are received from the two encoder signals, the motor controller can interpret the motor velocity.

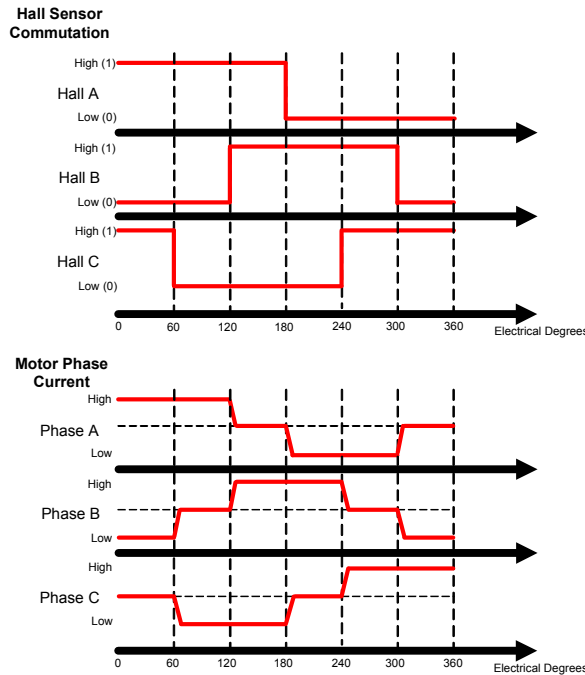
Figure 2.6 represents encoder "pulse" signals, showing how depending on which signal is read first and at what frequency the "pulses" arrive, the speed and direction of the motor shaft can be extrapolated. By keeping track of the number of encoder "pulses" with respect to a known motor "home" position, motor controllers are able to ascertain the actual motor location.



2.4.3 Hall Sensors

M/V motor controllers use Hall Sensors for commutation feedback and for velocity control. The Hall Sensors are built into the motor to detect the position of the rotor magnetic field. These sensors are mounted such that they each generate a square wave with either a 120-degree or 60-degree phase difference over one electrical cycle of the motor.

FIGURE 2.7 Hall Sensor Commutation and Motor Phase Current for 120-Degree Phasing



Note: Not all **ADVANCED** Motion Controls' servo drive series use the same commutation logic. The commutation diagrams provided here should be used only with drives covered within this manual.

Depending on the motor pole count, there may be more than one electrical cycle for every motor revolution. For every actual mechanical motor revolution, the number of electrical cycles will be the number of motor poles divided by two. For example:

- a 6-pole motor contains 3 electrical cycles per motor revolution
- a 4-pole motor contains 2 electrical cycles per motor revolution
- a 2-pole motor contains 1 electrical cycle per motor revolution

The motor controller powers two of the three motor phases with DC current during each specific Hall Sensor state: The table below shows the valid commutation states for both 120-degree and 60-degree phasing.

TABLE 2.5 Commutation Sequence Table

	60 Degree			120 Degree			Motor		
	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Phase A	Phase B	Phase C
Valid	1	0	0	1	0	0	HIGH	-	LOW
	1	1	0	1	1	0	-	HIGH	LOW
	1	1	1	0	1	0	LOW	HIGH	-
	0	1	1	0	1	1	LOW	-	HIGH
	0	0	1	0	0	1	-	LOW	HIGH
	0	0	0	1	0	1	HIGH	LOW	-
Invalid	1	0	1	1	1	1	-	-	-
	0	1	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

2.4.4 Tachometer

A DC Tachometer can be used on M/V motor controllers for velocity control. The tachometer provides an analog DC voltage feedback signal that is related to the actual motor speed and direction. The motor controller subsequently adjusts the output current based on the error between the tachometer feedback and the input command voltage. The maximum range of the tachometer feedback signal is ± 60 VDC.

Some applications may require an increase in the gain of the tachometer input signal. This occurrence will be most common in designs where the tachometer input has a low voltage to RPM scaling ratio. M/V motor controllers offer a through-hole location where a resistor can be added to increase the tachometer gain. Use the block diagram on the datasheet to determine an appropriate resistor value.

See [“Tachometer Input Gain Scaling” on page 41](#) for more information.

2.5 Modes of Operation

M/V motor controllers offers a variety of different control methods. It is possible to select the control method by DIP switch settings (see [“Potentiometer Function Details” on page 39](#) for more information). Consult the datasheet for the model in use to see which modes are available.

The name of the mode refers to which servo loop is being closed in the motor controller, not the end-result of the application. For instance, an M/V drive operating in Current (Torque) Mode may be used for a positioning application if the external digital motion controller is closing the position loop. Oftentimes, mode selection will be dependent on the requirements and capabilities of the digital motion controller in use as well as the end-result application.

2.5.1 Current (Torque) Mode

In Current (Torque) Mode, the input command voltage controls the output current. The motor controller will adjust the output duty cycle to maintain the commanded output current. This mode is used to control torque for rotary motors (force for linear motors), but the motor speed is not controlled. The output current can be monitored through an analog current monitor output pin. The voltage value read at the [“Current Monitor Output \(AB models\)”](#) can be multiplied by a scaling factor found on the M/V drive datasheet to determine the actual output current.



Note

While in Current (Torque) Mode, the motor controller will maintain a commanded torque output to the motor based on the input reference command. Sudden changes in the motor load may cause the motor controller to be outputting a high torque command with little load resistance, causing the motor to spin rapidly. Therefore, Current (Torque) Mode is recommended for applications using a digital position controller to maintain system stability.

2.5.2 Duty Cycle (Open Loop) Mode

In Duty Cycle Mode, the input command voltage controls the output PWM duty cycle of the drive, indirectly controlling the output voltage. Note that any fluctuations of the DC supply voltage will affect the voltage output to the motor.



Note

This mode is recommended as a method of controlling the motor velocity when precise velocity control is not critical to the application, and when actual velocity feedback is unavailable.

2.5.3 Hall Velocity Mode

In Hall Velocity Mode, the input command voltage controls the motor velocity, with the Hall Sensor frequency closing the velocity loop. An analog velocity monitor output allows observation of the actual motor speed through a Hz/V scaling factor found on the M/V motor controller datasheet. The voltage value read at the velocity monitor output can be used to determine the motor RPM through the scaling factor. See [“Velocity Monitor Output” on page 39](#) for the motor RPM equation.



Note

Due to the inherent low resolution of motor mounted Hall Sensors, Hall Velocity Mode is not recommended for low-speed applications below 300 rpm for a 6-pole motor, 600 rpm for a 4-pole motor, or 900 rpm for a 2-pole motor. Hall Velocity Mode is better suited for velocity control applications where the motor will be spinning at higher speeds.

2.5.4 Encoder Velocity Mode

In Encoder Velocity Mode, the input command controls the motor velocity, with the frequency of the encoder pulses closing the velocity loop. An analog velocity monitor output allows observation of the actual motor speed through a kHz/V scaling factor found on the M/V motor controller datasheet. The voltage value read at the velocity monitor output can be used to determine the motor RPM through the scaling factor. See [“Velocity Monitor Output” on page 39](#) for the motor RPM equation.



Note

The high resolution of motor mounted encoders allows for excellent velocity control and smooth motion at all speeds. Encoder Velocity Mode should be used for applications requiring precise and accurate velocity control, and is especially useful in applications where low-speed smoothness is the objective.

2.5.5 Tachometer Velocity Mode

In Tachometer Velocity Mode, the input command voltage controls the motor velocity. This mode uses an external DC tachometer to close the velocity loop. The M/V motor controller translates the DC voltage from the tachometer into motor speed and direction information. Some applications may require an increase in the gain of the tachometer input signal. This occurrence will be most common in designs where the tachometer input has a low voltage to RPM scaling ratio. M/V drives offers a through-hole location where a resistor can be added to increase the tachometer gain. Use the drive's block diagram to determine an appropriate resistor value.



Note

DC Tachometers have infinite resolution, allowing for extremely accurate velocity control. However, they also may be susceptible to electrical noise, most notably at low speeds.

2.5.6 Voltage Mode

In Voltage Mode the input reference signal commands a proportional motor voltage regardless of power supply voltage variations. This mode is recommended for velocity control when velocity feedback is unavailable and load variances are small.

2.5.7 IR Compensation Mode

If there is a load torque variation while in Voltage Mode, the motor current will also vary as torque is proportional to motor current. Hence, the motor terminal voltage will be reduced by the voltage drop over the motor winding resistance (IR), resulting in a speed reduction. Thus, motor speed, which is proportional to motor voltage (terminal voltage minus IR drop) varies with the load torque.

In order to compensate for the internal motor voltage drop, a voltage proportional to motor current can be added to the output voltage. An internal resistor adjusts the amount of compensation, and an additional through-hole resistor can be added to the location listed on the M/V motor controller datasheet. Use caution when adjusting the IR compensation level. If the feedback voltage is high enough to cause a rise in motor voltage with increased motor current, instability occurs. Such a result is due to the fact that increased voltage increases motor speed and thus load current which, in turn, increases motor voltage. If a great deal of motor torque change is anticipated, it may be wise to consider the addition of a speed sensor to the motor (e.g. tachometer, encoder, etc.).

2.6 System Requirements

To successfully incorporate an M/V motor controller into your system, you must be sure it will operate properly based on electrical, mechanical, and environmental specifications, follow some simple wiring guidelines, and perhaps make use of some accessories in anticipating impacts on performance. Before selecting an M/V motor controller, a user should consider the requirements of their system. This involves calculating the required voltage, current, torque, and power requirements of the system, as well as considering the operating environment and any other equipment the motor controller will be interfacing with.

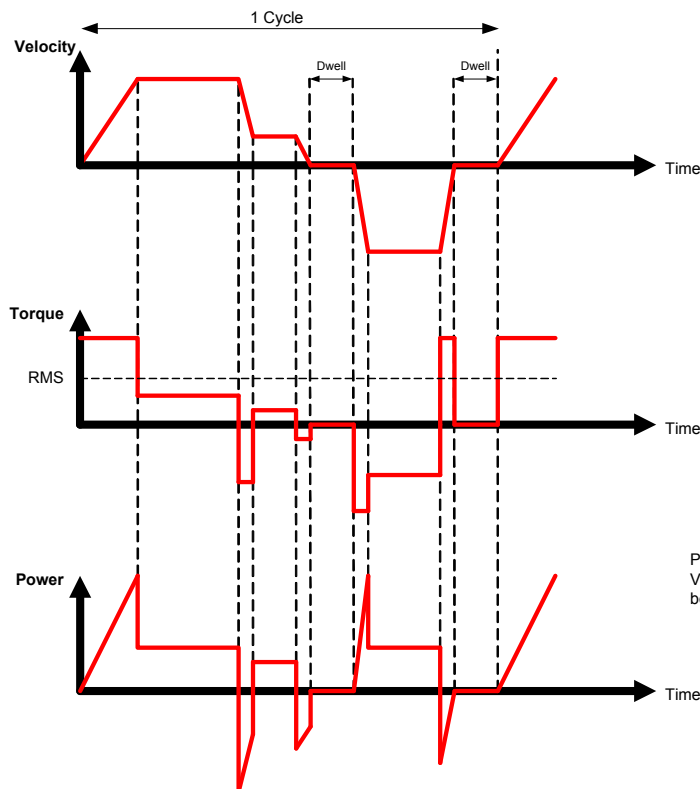
2.6.1 Motor Controller Selection and Sizing

M/V motor controllers have a given current and voltage rating unique to each drive. Based on the necessary application requirements and the information from the datasheet of the motor being used, a drive may be selected that will best suit the motor capabilities.

A motor controller should be selected that will meet the peak and continuous current requirements of the application, and operate within the voltage requirements of the system.

Motor Current and Voltage Motor voltage and current requirements are determined based on the maximum required torque and velocity. These requirements can be derived from the application move profiles (Figure 2.8).

FIGURE 2.8 Example Velocity, Torque, and Power Curves



The **motor current** I_M is the required motor current in amps DC, and is related to the torque needed to move the load by the following equation:

$$I_M = \frac{\text{Torque}}{K_T}$$

Where:

K_T -motor torque constant

The motor current will need to be calculated for both continuous and peak operation. The peak torque will be during the acceleration portion of the move profile.

The continuous torque is the average torque required by the system during the move profile, including dwell times. Both peak torque and continuous, or RMS (root mean square) torque need to be calculated. RMS torque can be calculated by plotting torque versus time for one move cycle.

$$T_{RMS} = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_i T_i^2 t_i}{\sum_i t_i}}$$

Here T_i is the torque and t_i is the time during segment i . In the case of a vertical application make sure to include the torque required to overcome gravity.

The system voltage requirement is based on the motor properties and how fast and hard the motor is driven. The system voltage requirement is equal to the **motor voltage**, V_M , required to achieve the move profile. In general, the motor voltage is proportional to the motor speed and the motor current is proportional to the motor shaft torque. Linear motors exhibit the same behavior except that in their case force is proportional to current. These relationships are described by the following equations:

$$V_m = I_m R_m + E$$

$$E = K_e S_m$$

for rotary motors $T = K_t I_m$

for linear motors $F = K_f I_m$

Where:

V_m	-motor voltage
I_m	-motor current (use the maximum current expected for the application)
R_m	-motor line-to-line resistance
E	-motor back-EMF voltage
T	-motor torque
F	-motor force
K_t	-motor torque constant
K_f	-motor force constant
K_e	-voltage constant
S_m	-motor speed (use the maximum speed expected for the application)

The motor manufacturer's data sheet contain K_t (or K_f) and K_e constants. Pay special attention to the units used (metric vs. English) and the amplitude specifications (peak-to-peak vs. RMS, phase-to-phase vs. phase-to-neutral).

The maximum motor terminal voltage and current can be calculated from the above equations. For example, a motor with a $K_e = 10V/Krpm$ and required speed of 3000 RPM would require 30V to operate. In this calculation the IR term (voltage drop across motor winding resistance) is disregarded. Maximum current is maximum torque divided by K_t . For example, a motor with $K_t = 0.5 Nm/A$ and maximum torque of 5 Nm would require 10 amps of current. Continuous current is RMS torque divided by K_t .

Motor Inductance The motor inductance is vital to the operation of motor controllers, as it ensures that the DC motor current is properly filtered.



Caution

A motor that does not meet the rated minimum inductance value of the drive may damage the drive! If the motor inductance value is less than the minimum required for the selected drive, use of an external filter card is necessary. See "[Inductive Filter Cards](#)" on page 27 for more information.

A minimum motor inductance rating for each specific motor controller can be found in the M/V drive datasheet. If the motor controller is operated below the maximum rated voltage, the minimum load inductance requirement may be reduced.

In the above equations the motor inductance is neglected. In brushless systems the voltage drop caused by the motor inductance can be significant. This is the case in high-speed applications if motors with high inductance and high pole count are used. Please use the following equation to determine motor terminal voltage (must be interpreted as a vector).

$$V_m = (R_m + j\omega L)I_m + E$$

Where:

L	-phase-to-phase motor inductance
ω	-maximum motor current frequency

2.6.2 Power Supply Selection and Sizing

There are several factors to consider when selecting a power supply for an M/V motor controller.

- Power Requirements
- Isolation
- Regeneration
- Voltage Ripple

Power Requirements refers to how much voltage and current will be required by the motor controller in the system. Isolation refers to whether the power supply needs an isolation transformer. Regeneration is the energy the power supply needs to absorb during deceleration. Voltage Ripple is the voltage fluctuation inherent in unregulated supplies.

Power Supply Current and Voltage The power supply current rating is based on the maximum current that will be required by the system. If the power supply powers more than one motor controller, then the current requirements for each drive should be added together. Due to the nature of motor controllers, the current into the drive does not always equal the current out of the drive. However, the power in is equal to the power out. Use the following equation to calculate the power supply output current, I_{PS} , based on the motor voltage and current requirements.

$$I_{PS} = \frac{V_M \cdot I_M}{V_{PS} \cdot (0.98)}$$

Where:

V_{PS}	-nominal power supply voltage
I_M	-motor current
V_M	-motor voltage

Use values of V_m and I_m at the point of maximum power in the move profile, [Figure 2.8](#) (when $V_M I_M = \max$). This will usually be at the end of a hard acceleration when both the torque and speed of the motor is high.

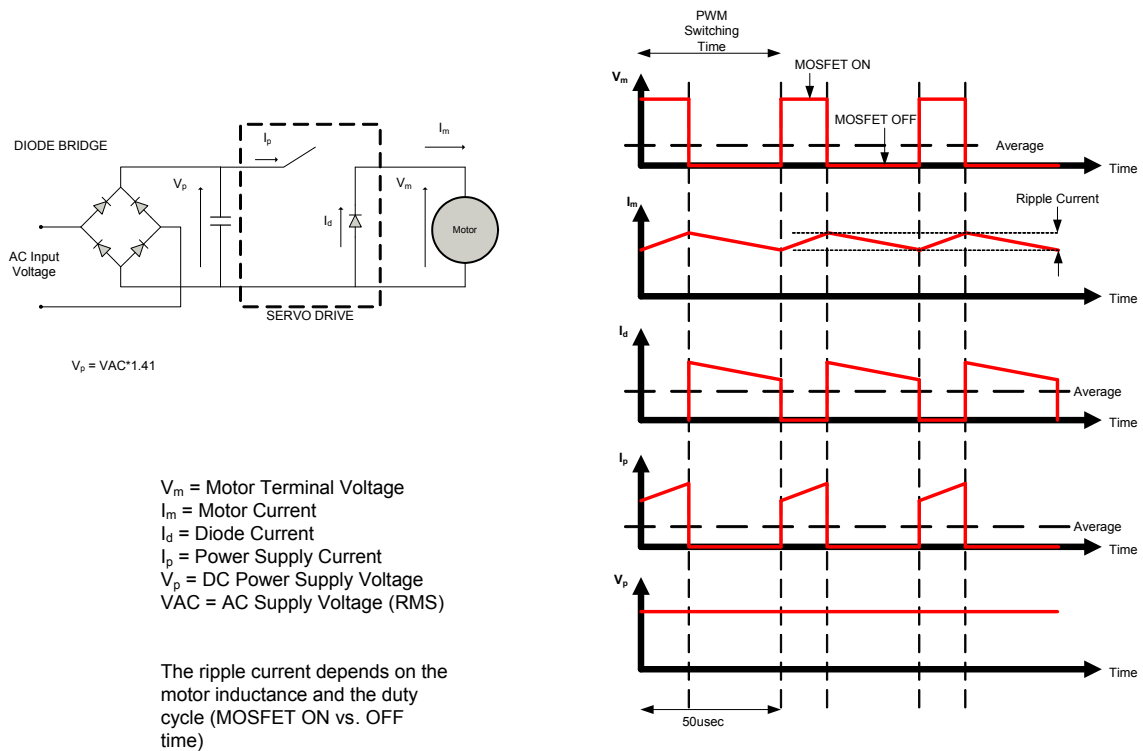
The power supply current is a pulsed DC current ([Figure 2.9](#)): when the MOSFET switch is on, it equals the motor current; when the MOSFET is off it is zero. Therefore, the power supply current is a function of the PWM duty cycle and the motor current (e.g. 30% duty cycle and 12 amps motor current will result in 4 amps power supply current). 30% duty cycle also means that the average motor voltage is 30% of the DC bus voltage. Power supply power is approximately equal to drive output power plus 3 to 5%.



Caution

The only time the power supply current needs to be as high as the drive output current is if the move profile requires maximum current at maximum velocity. In many cases however, maximum current is only required at start up and lower currents are required at higher speeds.

FIGURE 2.9 Unregulated DC Power Supply Current



A system will need a certain amount of voltage and current to operate properly. If the power supply has too little voltage/current the system will not perform adequately. If the power supply has too much voltage the drive may shut down due to over voltage, or the motor controller may be damaged.

To avoid nuisance over- or under-voltage errors caused by fluctuations in the power supply, the ideal system power supply voltage should be at least 10% above the entire system voltage requirement, and at least 10% below the lowest value of the following:

- M/V motor controller over voltage
- External shunt regulator turn-on voltage (see [“Regeneration and Shunt Regulators”](#) on page 19)

These percentages also account for the variances in K_t and K_e , and losses in the system external to the motor controller. The selected margin depends on the system parameter variations.

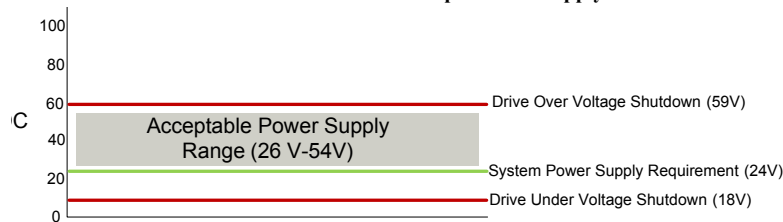


Caution

Do not select a supply voltage that could cause a mechanical over-speed in the event of a drive malfunction or a runaway condition. Brushed Motors may have voltage limitations due to the mechanical commutators. Consult the manufacturer's data sheets.

Figure 2.10 provides one possible example of an appropriate system power supply voltage for an AB250A060 M/V motor controller. The over voltage and under voltage shutdown levels can be found on the drive datasheet. The system power supply requirement is based on the motor properties and how much voltage is needed to achieve the application move profile (see “Motor Current and Voltage” on page 14). Keep in mind that the calculated value for V_m is the minimum voltage required to complete moves at the desired speed and torque. There should be at least 10% headroom between the calculated value and the actual power supply voltage to allow for machine changes such as increased friction due to wear, change in load, increased operating speed, etc.

FIGURE 2.10 Example Power Supply Selection



Isolation In systems where an AC line is involved, isolation is required between the AC line and the signal pins on the motor drive. This applies to all systems except those that use a battery as a power supply. There are two options for isolation:

1. The motor controller can have built in electrical isolation.
2. The power supply can provide isolation (e.g. a battery or an isolation transformer).

The system must have at least one of these options to operate safely.

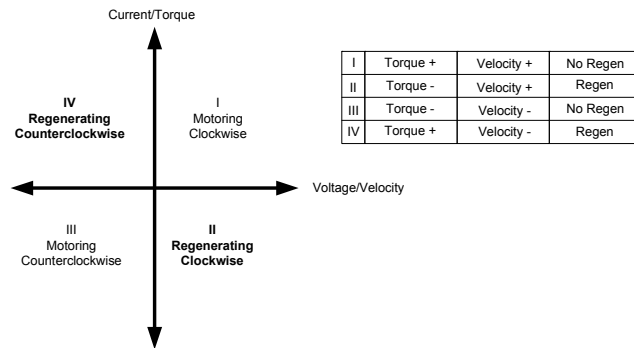
200 volt M/V motor controllers come with standard electrical isolation between the high power and low power signals. The isolation is indicated by a dashed line through the functional block diagram separating power ground from signal ground.

Power Supply with Isolation

An isolated power supply is either a battery or a power supply that uses an isolation transformer to isolate the AC line voltage from the power supply ground. This allows both the power ground on an isolated power supply and the signal ground on a non-isolated drive to be safely pulled to earth ground. Always use an isolated power supply if there is no isolation in the drive.

Regeneration and Shunt Regulators Use of a shunt regulator is necessary in systems where motor deceleration or a downward motion of the motor load will cause the system’s mechanical energy to be regenerated via the drive back onto the power supply.

FIGURE 2.11 Four Quadrant Operation - Regeneration occurs when Torque and Velocity polarity are opposite



This regenerated energy can charge the power supply capacitors to levels above that of the motor controller over-voltage shutdown level. If the power supply capacitance is unable to handle this excess energy, or if it is impractical to supply enough capacitance, then an external shunt regulator must be used to dissipate the regenerated energy. Shunt regulators are essentially a resistor placed in parallel with the DC bus. The shunt regulator will "turn-on" at a certain voltage level (set below the drive over-voltage shutdown level) and discharge the regenerated electric energy in the form of heat.

The voltage rise on the power supply capacitors without a shunt regulator, can be calculated according to a simple energy balance equation. The amount of energy transferred to the power supply can be determined through:

$$E_i = E_f$$

Where:

E_i -initial energy
 E_f -final energy

These energy terms can be broken down into the approximate mechanical and electrical terms - capacitive, kinetic, and potential energy. The energy equations for these individual components are as follows:

$$E_c = \frac{1}{2}CV_{nom}^2$$

Where:

E_c -energy stored in a capacitor (joules)
 C -capacitance
 V_{nom} -nominal bus voltage of the system

$$E_r = \frac{1}{2}J\omega^2$$

Where:

E_r	-kinetic (mechanical) energy of the load (joules)
J	-inertia of the load (kg-m ²)
ω	-angular velocity of the load (rads/s)

$$E_p = mgh$$

Where:

E_p	-potential mechanical energy (joules)
m	-mass of the load (kg)
g	-gravitational acceleration (9.81 m/s ²)
h	-vertical height of the load (meters)

During regeneration the kinetic and potential energy will be stored in the power supply's capacitor. To determine the final power supply voltage following a regenerative event, the following equation may be used for most requirements:

$$(E_c \cdot E_r \cdot E_p)_i = (E_c \cdot E_r \cdot E_p)_f$$

$$\frac{1}{2}CV_{nom}^2 + \frac{1}{2}J\omega_i^2 + mgh_i = \frac{1}{2}CV_f^2 + \frac{1}{2}J\omega_f^2 + mgh_f$$

Which simplifies to:

$$V_f = \sqrt{V_{nom}^2 + \frac{J}{C}(\omega_i^2 - \omega_f^2) + \frac{2mg(h_i - h_f)}{C}}$$

The V_f calculated must be below the power supply capacitance voltage rating and the drive over voltage limit. If this is not the case, a shunt regulator is necessary. A shunt regulator is sized in the same way as a motor or controller, i.e. continuous and RMS power dissipation must be determined. The power dissipation requirements can be determined from the application move profile (see [Figure 2.8](#)).

ADVANCED Motion Controls offers a variety of shunt regulators for motor controllers. When choosing a shunt regulator, select one with a shunt voltage that is greater than the DC bus voltage of the application but less than the over voltage shutdown of the drive. Verify the need

for a shunt regulator by operating the motor controller under the worst-case braking and deceleration conditions. If the drive shuts off due to over-voltage, a shunt regulator is necessary.

Continuous Regeneration

In the special case where an application requires continuous regeneration (more than a few seconds) then a shunt regulator may not be sufficient to dissipate the regenerative energy. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls for possible solutions to solve this kind of application. Some examples:

- Web tensioning device
- Electric vehicle rolling down a long hill
- Spinning mass with a very large inertia (grinding wheel, flywheel, centrifuge)
- Heavy lift gantry

Voltage Ripple For the most part, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls motor controllers are unaffected by voltage ripple from the power supply. The current loop is fast enough to compensate for 60 Hz fluctuations in the bus voltage, and the components in the drive are robust enough to withstand all but the most extreme cases. Peak to peak voltage ripple as high as 25 V is acceptable.

There are some applications where the voltage ripple can cause unacceptable performance. This can become apparent where constant torque or force is critical or when the bus voltage is pulled low during high speed and high current applications. If necessary, the voltage ripple from the power supply can be reduced, either by switching from single phase AC to three phase AC, or by increasing the capacitance of the power supply.

The voltage ripple for a system can be estimated using the equation:

$$V_R = \frac{I_{PS}}{C_{PS}} F_f$$

Where:

V_R	-voltage ripple
C_{PS}	-power supply capacitance
I_{PS}	-power supply output current
F_f	-frequency factor (1/hertz)

The power supply capacitance can be estimated by rearranging the above equation to solve for the capacitance as:

$$C_{PS} = \frac{I_{PS}}{V_R} F_f$$

The frequency factor can be determined from:

$$F_f = \frac{0.42}{f}$$

where f is the AC line frequency in hertz. Note that for half wave rectified power supplies, $f = f/2$.

The power supply output current, if unknown, can be estimated by using information from the output side of the motor controller as given below:

$$I_{PS} = \frac{V_M \cdot I_M}{V_{PS} \cdot (0.98)}$$

Where:

- I_M -current through the motor
- V_{PS} -nominal power supply voltage
- V_M -motor voltage (see “[Motor Current and Voltage](#)” on page 14)

2.6.3 Environmental Specifications

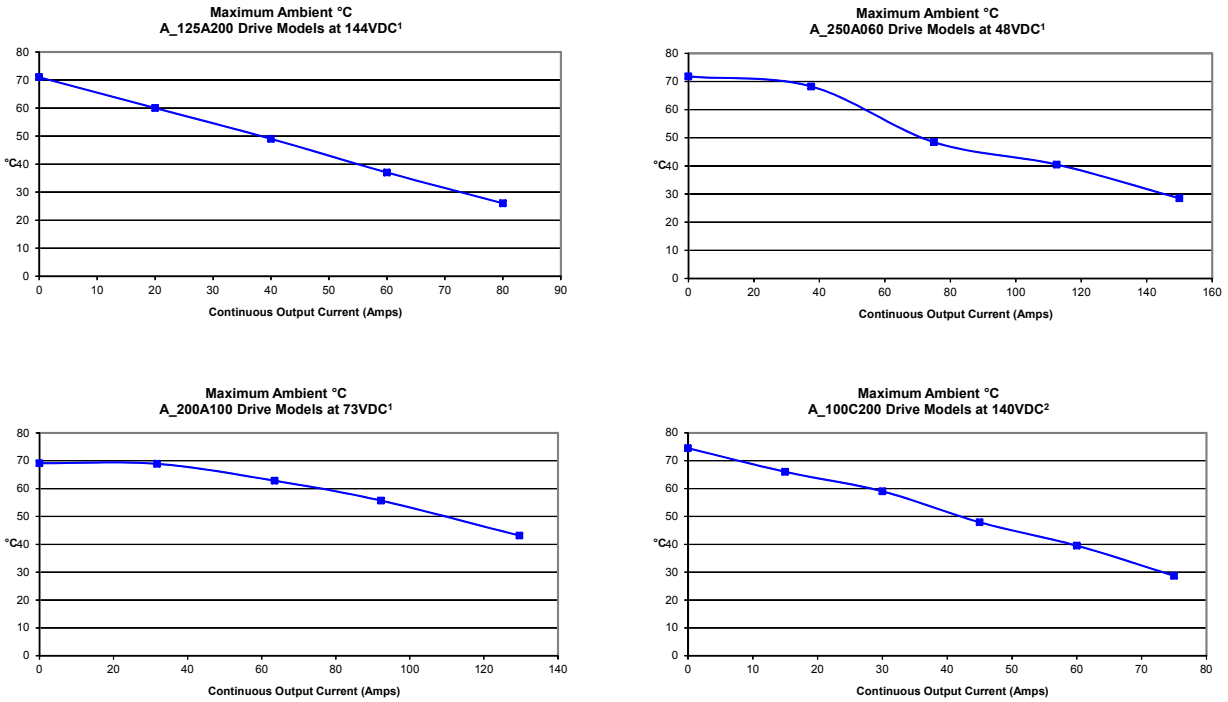
To ensure proper operation of an M/V motor controller, it is important to evaluate the operating environment prior to installing the drive.

TABLE 2.6 Environmental Specifications

Environmental Specifications	
Parameter	Description
Baseplate Temperature Range	0 - 75 °C (32 - 167 °F)
Humidity	90%, non-condensing
Mechanical Shock	10g, 11ms, Half-sine
Vibration	2 - 2000 Hz @ 2.5g
Altitude	0-3000m
IP Rating	IP65

Ambient Temperature Range M/V motor controllers contain a built-in over-temperature disabling feature if the baseplate temperature rises above 75°C. For a specific continuous output current and DC supply voltage, [Figure 2.12](#) specifies an upper limit to the ambient temperature range M/V motor controllers can operate within while keeping the baseplate temperature below 75°C. Additional cooling and/or heatsinking are required to achieve rated performance. It is also recommended to apply thermal grease between the drive baseplate and external heatsink.

FIGURE 2.12 M/V Ambient Temperature Range



1. Heatsink used is 8 7/8" x 10 3/4" x 2 3/8" finned heatsink with 36 cfm air flow on heatsink
2. Heatsink used is 15" x 27 7/8" x 5/8" aluminum plate heatsink with 260 cfm air flow on heatsink. For output currents above 75 A, additional cooling and/or heatsinking is required.

Shock/Vibrations While M/V motor controllers are designed to withstand a high degree of mechanical shock and vibration, too much physical abuse can cause erratic behavior, or cause operation to cease entirely. Be sure the motor controller is securely mounted in the system to reduce the shock and vibration exposure. The best way to secure the motor controller against mechanical vibration is to use screws to mount the drive by its baseplate. For information on mounting options and procedures, see [“Mounting” on page 36](#) and the dimensional drawings and information on the motor drive datasheet.



Caution

Care should be taken to ensure the motor controller is securely mounted in a location where no moving parts will come in contact with the motor controller.

3

Integration in the Servo System

This chapter will give various details on incorporating an M/V motor controller into a system, such as how to properly ground the drive along with the entire system, and how to properly connect motor wires, power supply wires, feedback wires, and inputs into the M/V servo drive.

3.1 LVD Requirements

The servo drives covered in the LVD Reference report were investigated as components intended to be installed in complete systems that meet the requirements of the Machinery Directive. In order for these units to be acceptable in the end users' equipment, the following conditions of acceptability must be met.

1. European approved overload and current protection must be provided for the motors as specified in section 7.2 and 7.3 of EN60204.1.
2. A disconnect switch shall be installed in the final system as specified in section 5.3 of EN60204.1.
3. All drives that do not have a grounding terminal must be installed in, and conductively connected to a grounded end use enclosure in order to comply with the accessibility requirements of section 6, and to establish grounding continuity for the system in accordance with section 8 of EN60204.1.
4. A disconnecting device that will prevent the unexpected start-up of a machine shall be provided if the machine could cause injury to persons. This device shall prevent the automatic restarting of the machine after any failure condition shuts the machine down.
5. European approved over current protective devices must be installed in line before the servo drive, these devices shall be installed and rated in accordance with the installation instructions (the installation instructions shall specify an over current rating value as low as possible, but taking into consideration inrush currents, etc.). Servo drives that incorporate their own primary fuses do not need to incorporate over protection in the end users' equipment.

These items should be included in your declaration of incorporation as well as the name and address of your company, description of the equipment, a statement that the servo drives must not be put into service until the machinery into which they are incorporated has been declared in conformity with the provisions of the Machinery Directive, and identification of the person signing.

3.2 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements

The following sections contain installation instructions necessary for meeting EMC requirements.

Contact the factory for assistance in determining the type of drive in use.

General

1. Shielded cables must be used for all interconnect cables to the drive and the shield of the cable must be grounded at the closest ground point with the least amount of resistance.
2. The drive's metal enclosure must be grounded to the closest ground point with the least amount of resistance.
3. The drive must be mounted in such a manner that the connectors and exposed printed circuit board are not accessible to be touched by personnel when the product is in operation. If this is unavoidable there must be clear instructions that the drive is not to be touched during operation. This is to avoid possible malfunction due to electrostatic discharge from personnel.

Analog Input Drives

4. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted to the low level signal interconnect cables to prevent pickup from external RF fields.

PWM Input Drives

5. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted to the PWM input cable to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

MOSFET Switching Drives

6. A Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core must be fitted at the load cable connector to reduce electromagnetic emissions.
7. An appropriately rated Cosel TAC series AC power filter in combination with a Fair Rite model 5977002701 torroid (placed on the supply end of the filter) must be fitted to the AC supply to any MOSFET drive system in order to reduce conducted emissions fed back into the supply network.

IGBT Switching Drives

8. An appropriately rated Cosel TAC series AC power filter in combination with a Fair Rite model 0443167251 round suppression core (placed on the supply end of the filter) must be fitted to the AC supply to any IGBT drive system in order to reduce conducted emissions fed back into the supply network.
9. A Fair Rite model 0443164151 round suppression core and model 5977003801 torroid must be fitted at the load cable connector to reduce electromagnetic emissions.

Fitting of AC Power Filters

It is possible for noise generated by the machine to "leak" onto the main AC power, and then get distributed to nearby equipment. If this equipment is sensitive, it may be adversely

affected by the noise. AC power filters can filter this noise and keep it from getting on the AC power signal. The above mentioned AC power filters should be mounted flat against the enclosure of the product using the two mounting lugs provided on the filter. Paint should be removed from the enclosure where the filter is fitted to ensure good metal to metal contact. The filter should be mounted as close to the point where the AC power filter enters the enclosure as possible. Also, the AC power cable on the load end of the filter should be routed as far from the AC power cable on the supply end of the filter and all other cables and circuitry to minimize RF coupling.

3.2.1 Ferrite Suppression Core Set-up

If PWM switching noise couples onto the feedback signals or onto the signal ground, then a ferrite suppression core can be used to attenuate the noise. Take the motor leads and wrap them around the suppression core as many times as reasonable possible, usually 2-5 times. Make sure to strip back the cable shield and only wrap the motor wires. There will be two wires for single phased (brushed) motors and 3 wires for three phase (brushless) motors. Wrap the motor wires together as a group around the suppression core and leave the motor case ground wire out of the loop. The suppression core should be located as near to the drive as possible. TDK ZCAT series snap-on filters are recommended for reducing radiated emissions on all I/O cables.

3.2.2 Inductive Filter Cards

Inductive filter cards are added in series with the motor and are used to increase the load inductance in order to meet the minimum load inductance requirement of the drive. They also serve to counteract the effects of line capacitance found in long cable runs and in high voltage systems. These filter cards also have the added benefit of reducing the amount of PWM noise that couples onto the signal lines.

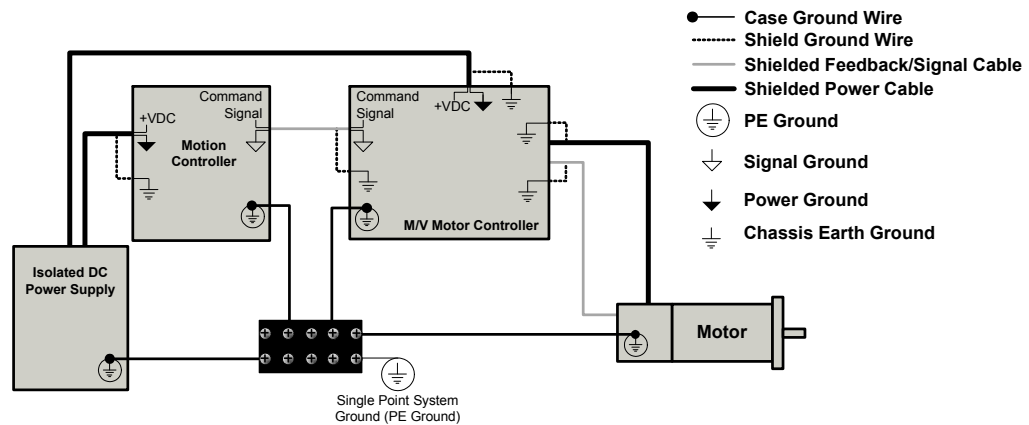
Visit www.a-m-c.com/products/filter_cards.html for information on purchasing *ADVANCED* Motion Controls inductive filter cards.

3.3 Grounding

In most servo systems all the case grounds should be connected to a single Protective Earth (PE) ground point in a "star" configuration. Grounding the case grounds at a central PE ground point reduces the chance for ground loops and helps to minimize high frequency voltage differentials between components. All ground wires must be of a heavy gauge and be as short as possible. The following should be securely grounded at the central PE grounding point:

- Motor chassis
- Controller chassis
- Power supply chassis
- Analog Servo Drive chassis

FIGURE 3.1 System Grounding



Ground cable shield wires at the drive side to a chassis earth ground point.

The DC power ground and the input reference command signal ground are oftentimes at a different potential than chassis/PE ground. The signal ground of the motion controller must be connected to the signal ground of the M/V motor controller to avoid picking up noise due to the "floating" differential servo drive input. In systems using an isolated DC power supply, signal ground and/or power ground can be referenced to chassis ground. First decide if this is both appropriate and safe. If this is the case, they can be grounded at the central grounding point. For systems using AC power referenced to chassis ground, the drive must have internal optical isolation to avoid a short through the the drive's diode bridge.



Warning

Grounding is important for safety. The grounding recommendations in this manual may not be appropriate for all applications and system machinery. It is the responsibility of the system designer to follow applicable regulations and guidelines as they apply to the specific servo system.

3.4 Wiring

Servo system wiring typically involves wiring a controller (digital or analog), a motor controller (servo drive), a power supply, and a motor. Wiring these servo system components is fairly easy when a few simple rules are observed.

As with any high efficiency PWM servo drive, the possibility of noise and interference coupling through the cabling and wires can be harmful to overall system performance. Noise in the form of interfering signals can be coupled:

- Capacitively (electrostatic coupling) onto signal wires in the circuit (the effect is more serious for high impedance points).
- Magnetically to closed loops in the signal circuit (independent of impedance levels).
- Electromagnetically to signal wires acting as small antennas for electromagnetic radiation.
- From one part of the circuit to other parts through voltage drops on ground lines.

Experience shows that the main source of noise is the high DV/DT (typically about 1V/nanosecond) of the drive's output power stage. This PWM output can couple back to the signal lines through the output and input wires. The best methods to reduce this effect are to move signal and motor leads apart, use an inductive filter card, add shielding, and use differential inputs at the drive.

Unfortunately, low-frequency magnetic fields are not significantly reduced by metal enclosures. Typical sources are 50 or 60 Hz power transformers and low frequency current changes in the motor leads. Avoid large loop areas in signal, power-supply, and motor wires. Twisted pairs of wires are quite effective in reducing magnetic pick-up because the enclosed area is small, and the signals induced in successive twist cancel.

3.4.1 Wire Gauge

As the wire diameter decreases, the impedance increases. Higher impedance wire will broadcast more noise than lower impedance wire. Therefore, when selecting the wire gauge for the motor power wires, power supply wires, and ground wires, it is better to err on the side of being too thick rather than too thin. This becomes more critical as the cable length increases. The following table provides recommendations for selecting the appropriate wire size for a specific current. These values should be used as reference only. Consult any applicable national or local electrical codes for specific guidelines.

TABLE 3.1 Current and Wire Gauges

Current (A)	Minimum Wire Size (AWG)	mm ²
10	#20	0.518
15	#18	0.823
20	#16	1.31
35	#14	2.08
45	#12	3.31
60	#10	5.26
80	#8	8.37
120	#6	13.3
150	#0	53.5
200	#00	67.4

3.4.2 Motor Wiring

The motor power wires supply power from the motor controller to the motor. Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the motor power cables is recommended to reduce the amount of noise coupling to sensitive components.

- For a brushless motor, twist all three motor wires together as a group.
- For a brushed motor or voice coil, twist the two motor wires together as a group.

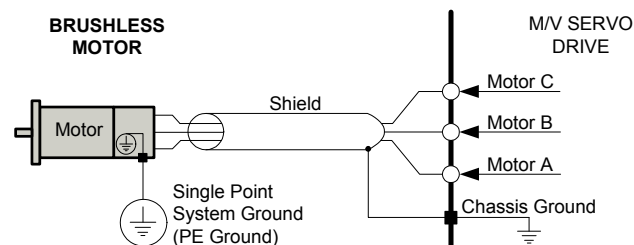
Ground the motor power cable shield at one end only to the motor controller chassis ground. The motor power leads should be bundled and shielded in their own cable and kept separate from feedback signal wires.



DO NOT use wire shield to carry motor current or power!

The diagram below shows how an M/V motor controller connects to a Brushless (three-phase) motor. Notice that the motor wires are shielded, and that the motor housing is grounded to the single point system ground (PE Ground). The cable shield should be grounded at the motor controller side to chassis ground.

FIGURE 3.2 Motor Power Output Wiring



If using a Brushed (single-phase) motor, connect the two motor wires to Motor A and Motor B pins only. See ["Brushed Motor Setup"](#) on page 44 for further connection instructions.



If using relays or other means to disconnect the motor leads, be sure the drive is disabled before reconnecting the motor leads to the drive. Connecting the motor leads to the drive while it is enabled can generate extremely high voltage spikes which will damage the drive.

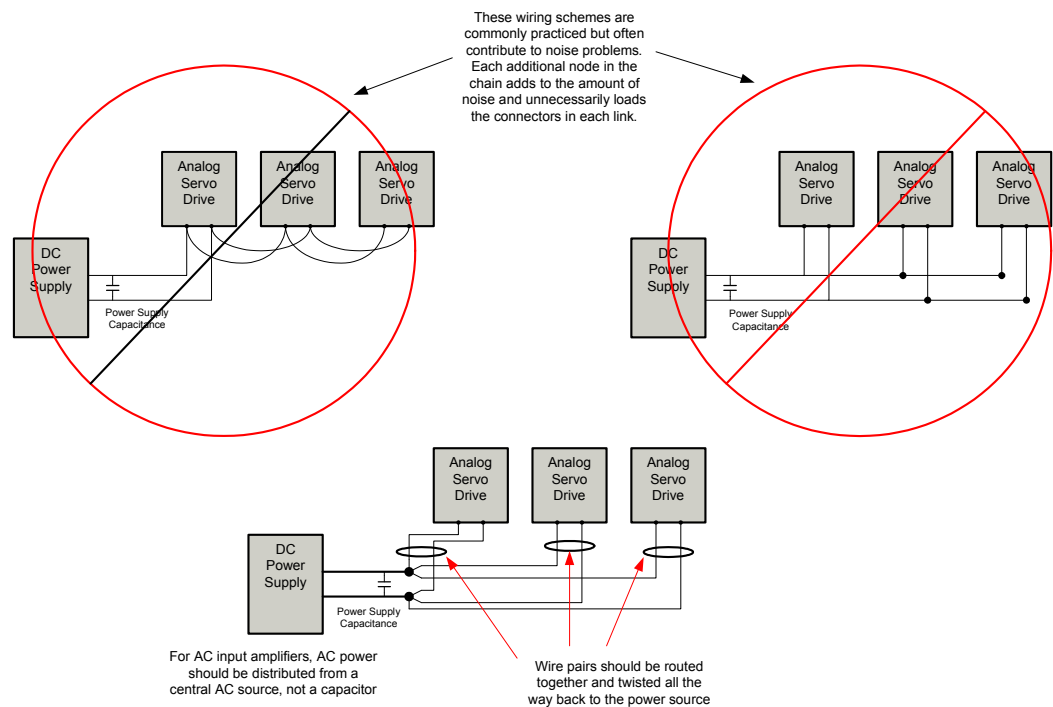
3.4.3 Power Supply Wiring

The PWM current spikes generated by the power output-stage are supplied by the internal power supply capacitors. In order to keep the current ripple on these capacitors to an acceptable level it is necessary to use heavy power supply leads and keep them as short as possible. Reduce the inductance of the power leads by twisting them. Ground the power supply cable shield at one end only to the servo drive chassis ground.

When multiple drives are installed in a single application, precaution regarding ground loops must be taken. Whenever there are two or more possible current paths to a ground connection, damage can occur or noise can be introduced in the system. The following rules apply to all multiple axis installations, regardless of the number of power supplies used (see Figure 3.3):

1. Run separate power supply leads to each drive directly from the power supply filter capacitor.
2. Never "daisy-chain" any power or DC common connections. Use a "star"-connection instead.

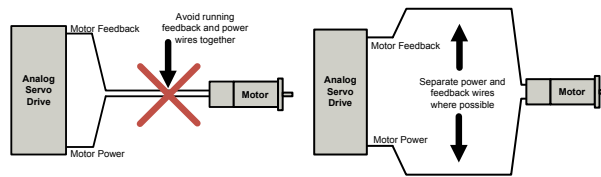
FIGURE 3.3 Multiple Power Supply Wiring



3.4.4 Feedback Wiring

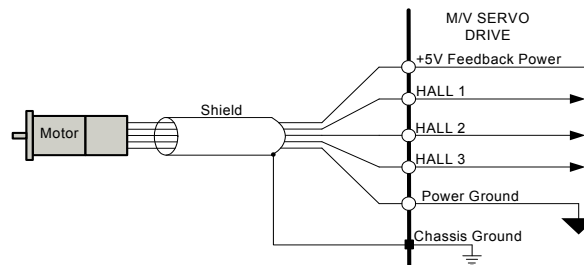
Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the feedback wires is recommended. Ground the shield at one end only to the motor controller chassis ground. Route cables and/or wires to minimize their length and exposure to noise sources. The motor power wires are a major source of noise, and the motor feedback wires are susceptible to receiving noise. This is why it is never a good idea to route the motor power wires with the motor feedback wires, even if they are shielded. Although both of these cables originate at the motor controller and terminate at the motor, try to find separate paths that maintain distance between the two. A rule of thumb for the minimum distance between these wires is 10cm for every 10m of cable length.

FIGURE 3.4 Feedback Wiring



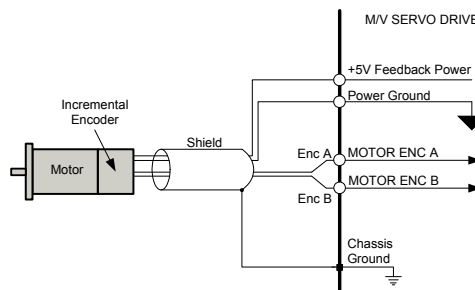
Hall Sensors M/V motor controllers accept single-ended Hall Sensor feedback for commutation and velocity control, and also include a +5V, 150mA low voltage supply output that can be used to power the Hall Sensors. Verify on the motor datasheet that the voltage and current rating of the supply output will work with the Hall Sensors before connecting.

FIGURE 3.5 Hall Sensor Input Connections



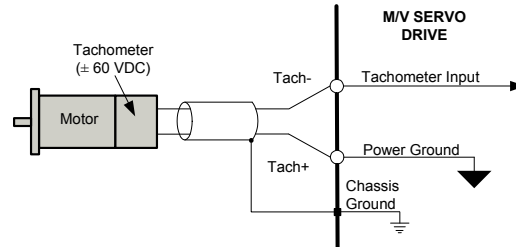
Incremental Encoder M/V motor controllers support single-ended incremental encoder feedback. Both the "A" and "B" channels of the encoder are required for operation. If using the +5V, 150mA low voltage power supply output from the motor controller, verify that the supply output voltage and current rating is sufficient for the encoder specifications.

FIGURE 3.6 Incremental Encoder Connections



Tachometer Connect the negative tachometer input to the tachometer input pin, and connect the positive tachometer input to power ground. The motor controller must be in Tachometer Velocity mode in order to properly use the tachometer input. See the M/V drive datasheet for specific DIP switch settings. The tachometer input has a range of ± 60 VDC.

FIGURE 3.7 Tachometer Input Connections



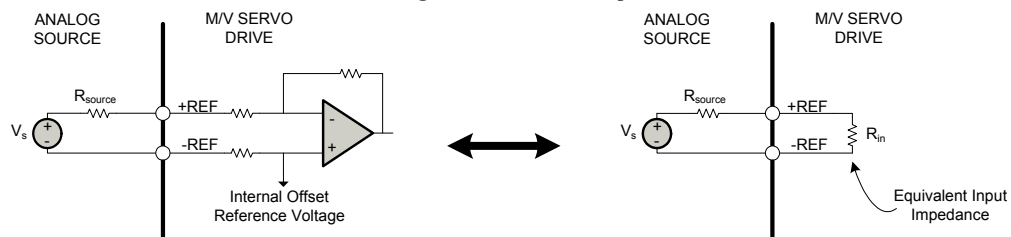
3.4.5 Input Reference Wiring

Use of a twisted, shielded pair for the input reference wires is recommended. Connect the reference source "+" to "+REF IN", and the reference source "-" (or common) to "-REF IN". Connect the shield to the servo drive chassis ground. The servo drive's reference input circuit will attenuate the common mode voltage between signal source and drive power grounds.

Long signal wires (10-15 feet and up) can also be a source of noise when driven from a typical op-amp output. Due to the inductance and capacitance of the wire the op-amp can oscillate. It is always recommended to set a fixed voltage at the motion controller and then check the signal at the M/V drive with an oscilloscope to make sure that the signal is noise free.

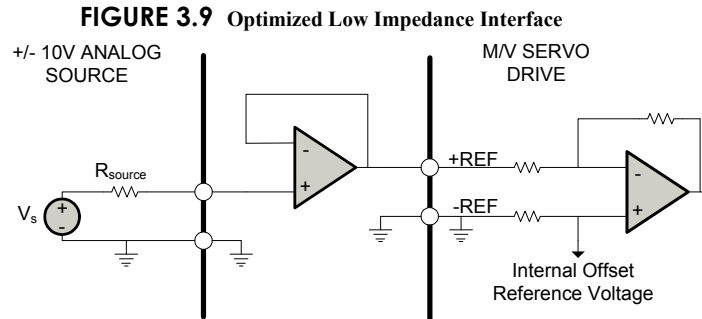
Analog Input When using an analog signal for an input command, it is important to consider the output impedance of the analog source when interfacing to input circuitry. A poorly designed analog input interface can lead to undesired command signal attenuation. Figure 3.8 shows an external analog source connected to an analog input. The ideal voltage delivered to the input is V_s . However, the voltage drop across R_{source} will reduce the signal being delivered to the drive input. This voltage drop is dependent on the value of R_{source} and the drive's input impedance.

FIGURE 3.8 Analog Source and Drive Input



The drive's analog input can be simplified to a single impedance, R_{in} , as shown in Figure 3.8. If the impedance of R_{source} is of the same magnitude or larger than R_{in} , there will be a significant voltage drop across R_{source} . Reduced values of R_{source} cause a lower voltage drop that increases signal integrity. In order to avoid a voltage drop of more than 5% between the source and the drive, it is recommended to use an R_{source} value of less than or equal to 2kohm.

If there is a large output impedance from the analog source, it is recommended to use a buffer circuit between the analog source output and the drive input. A unity gain op-amp circuit as shown in Figure 3.9 will ensure low output impedance with minimal voltage drop.



3.4.6 Command Wiring

The diagrams below show the recommended connections for the different command configurations. See Table 4.3 on page 41 for information on how to select the input command type for AVB drive models (Standard/Inverse, Single-Ended/Wigwag, 3-wire/2-wire).

FIGURE 3.10 AVB Models Command Source Wiring

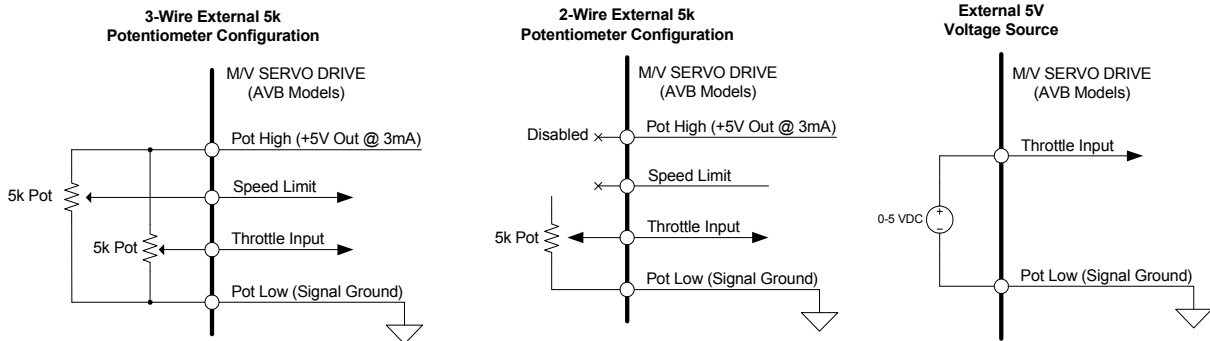
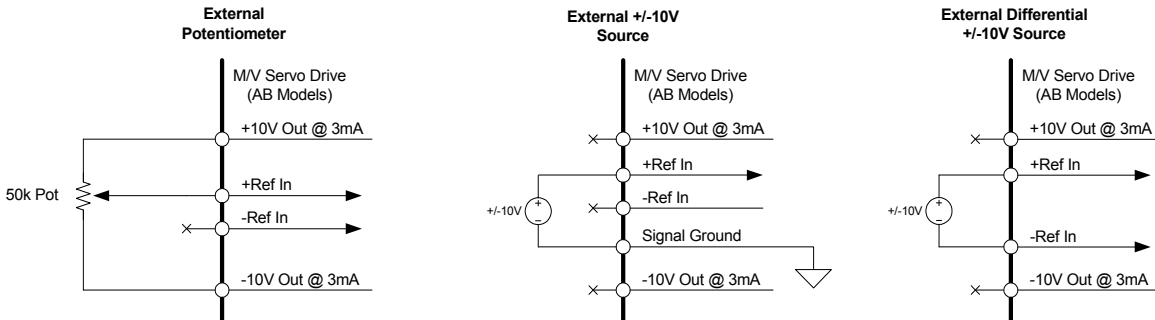


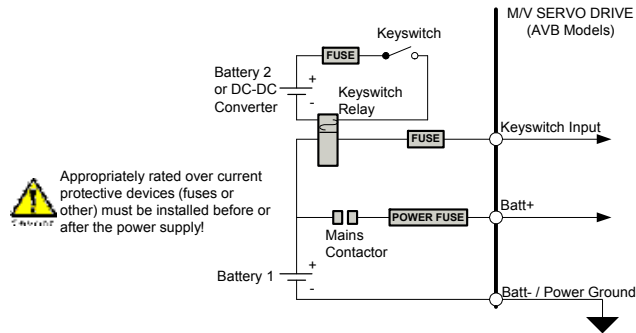
FIGURE 3.11 AB Models Command Source Wiring



3.4.7 Keyswitch Input

The Keyswitch input on AVB models provides logic power to the motor controller, and functions as the master switch. The Keyswitch must be on in order for the motor controller to function.

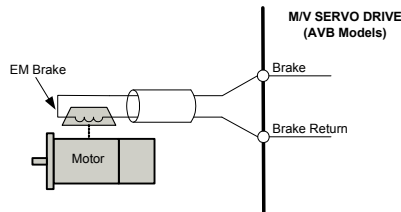
FIGURE 3.12 Keyswitch Input



3.4.8 Brake Output

AVB models feature an electromagnetic holding brake output (24V/200Hz PWM, 3A max) that will energize when the Keyswitch Input is on and the motor controller is enabled.

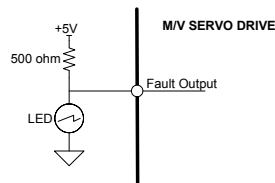
FIGURE 3.13 Brake Output



3.4.9 Fault Output

The diagram below shows the recommended circuitry for utilizing an external voltage supply and LED with the Fault Output.

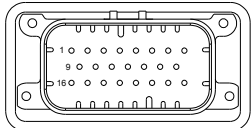
FIGURE 3.14 Fault Output



3.5 Mounting

M/V motor controllers provide mounting hole locations on the baseplate allowing either vertical or horizontal mounting configurations. Motor controllers can be mounted to a heatsink or other plane surface. Consult the datasheet for specific mounting dimensions and mounting hole locations.

3.6 Connectors

I/O Signal Connector		
Connector Information		23-pin, AMPSEAL connector
Mating Connector	Details	TE Connectivity: Housing P/N 770680-1; Socket Contacts P/N 770854-3 (loose); Seal Plug P/N 770678-1; Crimp Tool P/N 58529-1
	Included with Drive	No
		
<p>Mating connector housing, socket contacts, and seal plugs can be ordered as a kit using <i>ADVANCED</i> Motion Controls' part number KC-23AMPSEAL01. Crimp tool not included with mating connector kit. Circuit cavities remain sealed until pierced. Seal plugs are included to reseal pierced circuit cavities that will not be used. Seal plugs should be inserted into the circuit cavity as far as possible, large end first.</p>		
MOTOR POWER Connectors		
Connector Information		Three individual M6 threaded terminals
Mating Connector	Details	M6 screw or bolt with washer
	Included with Drive	Yes
POWER Connectors		
Connector Information		Two individual M6 threaded terminals
Mating Connector	Details	M6 screw or bolt with washer
	Included with Drive	Yes

4 Operation

This chapter will describe the operation and setup of an *ADVANCED* Motion Controls M/V™ motor controller.

4.1 Initial Setup and Features

To begin operation with your M/V motor controller, be sure to read and understand the previous chapters in this manual as well as the product datasheet. Be sure that all system specifications and requirements have been met, and become familiar with the capabilities and functions of the motor controller. Also, be aware of the “[Troubleshooting](#)” section at the end of this manual for solutions to basic operation issues.

Do not install the motor controller into the system without first determining that all chassis power has been removed for at least 10 seconds. Never remove a motor controller from an installation with power applied. Carefully follow the grounding and wiring instructions in the previous chapters to make sure your system is safely and properly set up.

4.1.1 Pin Function Details

The family of M/V motor controllers provides a number of various input and output pins for parameter observation and configuration options. Not all M/V models will have each of the following pin functions. Consult the specific datasheet to see which input/output pin functions are available.

Current Monitor Output (AB models) Measured relative to power ground. The current monitor provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the actual current output. The scaling factor can be found on the motor controller datasheet. The motor controller must be connected to a load in order to output actual current.

Example Measurement

The current monitor pin on a drive with a current monitor scaling factor of 14.4 A/V is measured to be 1.3V. This would mean the drive is outputting: $(14.4 \text{ A/V})(1.3\text{V}) = \mathbf{18.72\text{A}}$.

DC Bus Current Monitor Output (AVB models) Measured relative to power ground. The DC Bus current monitor provides an analog voltage output signal that is proportional to the actual power supply DC Bus current. The scaling factor can be found on the motor

controller datasheet. The motor controller must be connected to a load in order to output actual current.

Example Measurement

The DC bus current monitor pin on a motor controller with a current monitor scaling factor of 16.7 A/V is measured to be 0.3V. This would mean the drive is drawing: $(16.7 \text{ A/V})(0.3\text{V}) = 5.01\text{A}$.

Forward / Reverse Inputs With only one input active at a time, the Forward and Reverse inputs (AVB models only) select the direction of motion. Pull low to Signal Ground to activate. When the drive is disabled or faulted, activating both pins at the same time will energize Brake Output (Pin 7) to release the electromagnetic holding brake in order to push the vehicle. Activating only one input when the drive is disabled/faulted will not excite the Brake Output.

In Wigwag mode, the Forward and Reverse inputs have no effect, as the direction of motion is controlled by the throttle input. However, activating both Forward and Reverse inputs when the drive is disabled will still energize Brake Output (Pin 7) in Wigwag mode.

Inhibit Input This pin provides a +5V TTL input that allows a user to enable/disable the motor controller by either connecting this pin to ground or by applying a +5VDC voltage level to this pin, referenced to signal ground. By default, the motor controller will be enabled if this pin is high, and disabled if this pin is low. This logic can be reversed through DIP switch setting. This will require the inhibit line to be brought to ground to enable.

Speed/Command Limit Input The Speed/Command Limit input pin (AVB models only) is used to limit the maximum command with an external potentiometer (command type dependent on the mode of operation). The potentiometer should be connected between the POT HIGH and POT LOW pins, with the pot wiper connected to the Speed Limit input. The voltage value at the Speed Limit input will act as the upper limit available for the throttle input command. See [“Command Wiring” on page 34](#) for recommended connection diagrams.

Fault Output This pin provides a +5V TTL output measured relative to signal ground that will indicate when the motor controller is subject to one of the following fault conditions: inhibit, invalid Hall State, output short circuit, over voltage, over temperature, or power-up reset. This pin will read +5V (High) when the drive is in a fault state. The Fault Output can be used with an external voltage supply and LED. See [“Fault Output” on page 35](#) for the recommended circuitry.

M/V motor controllers automatically self-reset once all active fault conditions have been removed. For instance if the DC power supply rises above the over-voltage shutdown level, the Fault Output will indicate a fault, and the motor controller will be disabled. Once the DC power supply level is returned to a value below the over-voltage shutdown level, the Fault Output will return to the normal state, and the motor controller will automatically become enabled.

Low Voltage Power Supply Outputs M/V motor controllers include low voltage power supply outputs meant for customer use.

- **±10V (AB models) or 0-5V (AVB models), 3mA Output** - Typically used as an on-board analog input signal, can also be used with an external pot to vary the input signal.

- **+5V, 150 mA Output** - Can be used as power for an encoder or Hall Sensors. Consult the motor or encoder datasheet to determine the appropriate supply voltage and current requirements, as well as which wire from the motor is the feedback power supply wire before connecting this supply.

Velocity Monitor Output This pin provides an analog voltage output that is proportional to the actual motor speed. The scaling factor for each drive can be found on the drive datasheet.

- For a drive in Encoder Velocity Mode, substitute the voltage value read at the velocity monitor pin, V_{monitor} into the below equation to determine the motor RPM:

$$\text{Motor Velocity [RPM]} = \frac{V_{\text{monitor}} \cdot \text{Scaling Factor} \cdot 60}{\text{Number of encoder lines}}$$

- For a drive in Hall Velocity Mode, substitute the voltage value read at the velocity monitor pin, V_{monitor} into the below equation to determine the motor RPM:

$$\text{Motor Velocity [RPM]} = \frac{V_{\text{monitor}} \cdot \text{Scaling Factor} \cdot 120}{\text{Number of motor poles}}$$

4.1.2 Potentiometer Function Details

All on-board potentiometers vary in resistance from 0 to 50 kohm, over 12 turns. An additional full turn that does not effect resistance is provided on either end, for a total of 14 turns. When the end of potentiometer travel is reached, it will click once for each additional turn.

TABLE 4.1 Potentiometer Function Details

Potentiometer	Description
1 - Loop Gain Adjustment	This potentiometer must be set completely counter-clockwise in Current Mode. In Velocity, Voltage, or Duty Cycle Mode, this potentiometer adjusts the gain in the velocity forward position of the closed loop. Turning this potentiometer clockwise increases the gain. Start from the full counter-clockwise position, turn the potentiometer clockwise until the motor shaft oscillates, then back off one turn.
2 - Current Limit	This potentiometer adjusts the current limit of the drive. To adjust the current limit, use the following equation to determine the number of clockwise turns from the full counter-clockwise position necessary to set the desired current limit: $\# \text{ of turns (from full CCW)} = \left(\frac{I_{\text{system}}}{I_{\text{max}}} \right) 12 + 1$ <p>I_{system} = the desired current limit of the system (typically determined by motor current rating) I_{max} = maximum current capability of the drive; this value is determined after any external current limiting resistors have been used. If no external resistors have been used, then I_{max} is the default maximum continuous current limit set by the drive hardware. See "Current Limiting Procedure" on page 42 for an example of how to use this potentiometer.</p>
3 - Reference Gain	This potentiometer adjusts the ratio between the input signal and the output variable (voltage, current, velocity, or duty cycle). For a specific gain setting, turn this potentiometer fully counter-clockwise, and adjust the command input to 1V. Then turn clockwise while monitoring motor velocity or drive output voltage (depending on mode of operation) until the required output is obtained for the given 1V command. Turning this potentiometer counter-clockwise decreases the reference in gain, while setting this potentiometer in the fully clockwise position makes the whole range of drive output available. This potentiometer may be left in the fully clockwise position if a controller is used to close the velocity or position loops.
4 - Test/Offset	This potentiometer acts as an internal command source for testing when the Test/Offset switch is in the ON position. If the Test/Offset switch is in the OFF position, then this potentiometer can be used to adjust a small amount of command offset in order to compensate for offsets that may be present in the servo system. Turning this potentiometer clockwise adjusts the offset in a negative direction relative to the +Ref input command. Before offset adjustments are made, the reference inputs must be grounded or commanded to 0 volts.

Potentiometer	Description
5 - Ramp Time	This potentiometer adjusts the ramp time (both acceleration and deceleration) in both directions. The ramp time is the time required for the drive output to linearly ramp to the maximum possible commanded output. Adjustable range is from 0 to 20 seconds. No ramping will occur when set to zero. Turning clockwise will decrease the ramp time (faster response time).
6 - Deadband	This potentiometer adjusts the range of the command voltage which the drive will interpret as no output. Turning clockwise will decrease the deadband. The maximum deadband range is 30% in each direction. Therefore: - Command Range of 0 to 5V: Deadband range is 0 to 1.5V (both directions) - Command Range of 0 to $\pm 10V$: Deadband range is 0 to $\pm 3V$ - Wigwag Command Range of 0 to 5V: Deadband range is 1.75V to 3.25V ($2.5V \pm 0.75V$) The Neutral point is 0V for single-ended commands and 2.5V for Wigwag commands. The Deadband will have an effect on the rest of the command range. Therefore, to reach the maximum command would require increasing the Reference Gain (potentiometer 3).

Potentiometer Tool *ADVANCED* Motion Controls offers a tool for adjusting the potentiometers, part number PT01. This tool features an exposed stainless steel blade on one end and a recessed stainless steel blade on the other end. Contact customer service for ordering information.

4.1.3 Switch Function Details

Together with the described functions below certain switches may also be used in selecting the mode of operation or command input type. Switch implementation and functionality within the motor controller circuitry is included on the block diagram of the datasheet.

Switch bank SW1 contains switches used for drive configuration and mode selection.

TABLE 4.2 Switch Bank SW1 - Function Details

Switch	Description
1-1 Test/Offset	Switches the drive between Test mode and Offset mode. In Test mode, the command signal is adjustable via the Test/Offset potentiometer. In Offset mode, the drive will accept commands via the reference inputs, but a small amount of offset can be adjusted in order to compensate for offsets that may be present in the servo system.
1-2 120/60 Phasing	Selects Hall commutation phasing type. On = 120; Off = 60
1-3 Mode Selection	See drive datasheet for specific mode selection information.
1-4 Mode Selection	
1-5 Mode Selection	
1-6 Mode Selection	
1-7 Velocity Integrator Capacitor	Adds more capacitance to the velocity integrator function. Turn on for Hall Velocity Mode. On = more capacitance; Off = less capacitance
1-8 Velocity Feedback Polarity	Changes the polarity of the internal feedback signal and the velocity monitor output signal (Encoder or Hall Velocity modes only). Inversion of the feedback polarity may be required to prevent a motor run-away condition. See "Motor Problems" on page 58 for more information.
1-9 Inhibit Logic Selection	Sets the logic of the inhibit pins: On = Low to Inhibit; Off = Low to Enable
1-10 Ramp Command	Enables or disabled the Ramp feature. On = Enable Ramping; Off = Disable Ramping

Switch bank SW2 is included on AVB models only, and is used to select the command input type.

TABLE 4.3 Switch Bank SW2 (AVB models only) - Function Details

Switch		Description
2-1	Wigwag Select	Selects the command type between Wigwag or Single Ended. On = Wigwag; Off = Single-Ended
2-2	3 or 2-wire Pots	Selects the type of external potentiometers used for the application. On = 3-wire; Off = 2-wire. Note that when 2-wire is selected, the Pot High input (pin 3) becomes disabled. As an additional protection in 2-wire setting, whenever the command input exceeds the acceptable range (0-5V or 0-5kΩ) the output command will be disabled until the command input is reset to a zero output command.
2-3	Inverted Inputs	Selects whether the command input will interpret the command proportional or inversely proportional to the output. On = Standard; Off = Inverted Inputs
2-4	Half Speed Reverse	Rescale the reverse speeds to half of forward speeds. On = Half Speed Reverse; Off = Normal Speed Reverse

Switch bank SW3 is used to add additional resistance and capacitance to the current loop tuning circuitry. SW3 switches 1 through 5 add additional parallel capacitance to the current loop integrator capacitor, and SW3 switches 6 through 10 add additional series resistance to the current loop gain resistor (locations shown on datasheet block diagram). Capacitance and resistance values are given in Table 4.4 below along with the appropriate DIP switch settings.

TABLE 4.4 Switch Bank SW3 - Function Details

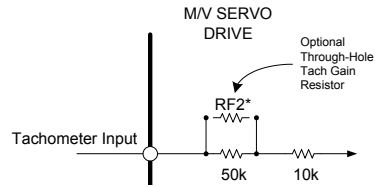
SW3 1-5 Additional Current Loop Integrator Capacitance (μF)																	
	SHORT	.082	.077	.072	.067	.062	.057	.052	.047	.035	.030	.025	.020	.015	.010	.005	OPEN
3-1	ON	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
3-2	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
3-3	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
3-4	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
3-5	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

SW3 6-10 Additional Current Loop Gain Resistance (kohm)																
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150
3-6	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
3-7	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
3-8	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
3-9	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
3-10	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON

SW3 6-10 (cont.) Additional Current Loop Gain Resistance (kohm)																
Switch	160	170	180	190	200	210	220	230	240	250	260	270	280	290	300	310
3-6	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
3-7	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
3-8	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
3-9	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
3-10	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

4.1.4 Tachometer Input Gain Scaling

Standard drive tachometer inputs are typically pre-configured such that the standard 60k input resistance scales the maximum tach input voltage to 60V. The 60k tachometer input resistance is actually populated with a 50k resistor in series with a 10k resistor. M/V drives also have a through-hole resistor location in parallel with the 50k resistor, as shown in Figure 4.1.

FIGURE 4.1 Tachometer Input Resistance


This allows users to optionally reduce the effective input resistance to a value that more closely matches their maximum application feedback voltage in order to increase the tachometer input gain. An appropriate tachometer input resistance value should be at least 1000 times the maximum tachometer voltage feedback value. From zero to infinite resistance (open connection), this through-hole location can scale the tachometer's maximum input voltage range from 10V to 60V.

To determine the maximum feedback voltage for the application:

1. Determine the absolute maximum speed required of the motor for the application (S_m , in kRPM).
2. Look up the tachometer's voltage to speed constant (K_v in V/kRPM).
3. Calculate for the tachometer's maximum voltage output in the application:

$$V_{max} = K_v \cdot S_m$$

Example

An application's maximum motor speed is 4.7 kRPM, and the tachometer is rated for 7 V/kRPM. Using the above equation, the maximum voltage from the tachometer input, V_{max} , will be 33V. Therefore, the equivalent tachometer input resistance must be at least 33k. Choosing an equivalent resistance value of 35k, solve for the required resistance of the through-hole resistor.

$$\text{Tach Gain Through-Hole Resistor (in kohm)} = \frac{(50 \cdot V_{max}) - 500}{60 - V_{max}} = \frac{(50 \cdot 35) - 500}{60 - 35} = 50k$$

As solved for above, the equivalent 35k resistance can be achieved by adding a 50k through-hole resistor in parallel with the existing 50k resistor on the drive tachometer input.



Notice

Scaling the tachometer input gain is not a required procedure for all applications. Most applications will work well even with low gains. The effect of low gains is only a slower velocity loop response.

4.1.5 Current Limiting Procedure

Before operating an M/V motor controller, the current output of the drive must be limited based on motor and system current limitations. The current limiting potentiometer (see ["Potentiometer Function Details" on page 39](#)) is used to manually adjust both the drive peak and continuous current limits to an appropriate value.

Example

An AB125A200 drive is going to be used with an application having a continuous current requirement of 45 amps, a peak current requirement of 75 amps, and a peak current limit of 85 amps. The current limiting potentiometer will be used to adjust the default AB125A200 current ratings to values within the system specifications.

1. Typically it is recommended to set the current limits of the drive below any continuous or peak current limits of the motor or application, allowing some headroom for safety, but above the application requirements if possible. In this case, the continuous current will be chosen at approximately 50 amps.
2. To reduce the current limits to the desired values, the current limit potentiometer can be used. Begin with the continuous current requirement, using the equation below to determine the number of clockwise turns for the Current Limit potentiometer:

$$\# \text{ of turns} = \frac{50 \text{ amps}}{80 \text{ amps}} 12 + 1$$

Solving for the number of turns yields approximately 8.5 turns in the clockwise direction from the fully counter-clockwise position.

3. The number of turns calculated above will therefore yield a peak current limit of approximately 78 amps, thereby satisfying both the continuous and peak current requirements of the application.

4.1.6 Drive Set-up Instructions

1. It is recommended to reduce the drive output current to avoid motor over heating during the setup procedure. Make sure the current has been set appropriately based on the procedure outlined in [“Current Limiting Procedure” on page 42](#).
2. According to the the mode selection table on the drive datasheet, set the drive for Duty Cycle (Open Loop) Mode, and set the Test/Offset switch to Test (SW1-1 = ON).
3. Check the power and connect it to the drive. Do not connect the motor lead wires.
4. Make sure the drive is in an enabled state via all enable inputs. See drive datasheet for details.
5. Set the Hall Sensor Commutation Switch (SW1-2) for the appropriate phasing (typically 120 degree). Connect the Hall sensor inputs. The drive status LED should be GREEN. Manually turn the motor shaft one revolution. The LED should remain green. If the LED turns red or changes between green and red:
 - check the Hall Sensor Commutation Switch
 - check power for the Hall Sensors
 - check the voltage level of the Hall inputs (see [Table 4.5](#))
 - for 60 degree phasing interchange Hall 1 and Hall 2
 (for more information see [“Invalid Hall Sensor State” on page 56](#))

TABLE 4.5 Commutation Sequence Table

	60 Degree			120 Degree			Motor		
	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Hall 1	Hall 2	Hall 3	Phase A	Phase B	Phase C
Valid	1	0	0	1	0	0	HIGH	-	LOW
	1	1	0	1	1	0	-	HIGH	LOW
	1	1	1	0	1	0	LOW	HIGH	-
	0	1	1	0	1	1	LOW	-	HIGH
	0	0	1	0	0	1	-	LOW	HIGH
	0	0	0	1	0	1	HIGH	LOW	-
Invalid	1	0	1	1	1	1	-	-	-
	0	1	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

6. Remove power. For three phase (brushless) motors, there are six different ways to connect the three motor wires to the Motor A, Motor B, and Motor C pins. All six combinations must be tested to find the proper combination. The correct combination should yield approximately identical motor speed in both directions. If the motor runs slower in one direction, or if the motor shaft has to be moved manually by hand to start the motor, the combination is incorrect. Motor speed can be verified by using the velocity monitor or by measuring the frequency of the Hall Sensors.
7. To begin, connect the three motor wires in any order.
8. Apply power to the drive, and slowly turn the Test/Offset potentiometer (Pot 4) in both directions. Observe the motor speed for both directions. Remove power from the drive, and rewire the three motor wires for a different combination. Test all six different combinations before proceeding.
9. Once the proper combination has been found, set the Test/Offset switch to Offset (SW1-1 = OFF), ground both reference inputs, and then adjust the Test/Offset potentiometer for zero speed.
10. Set the control mode suitable for the application.

Brushed Motor Setup M/V drives are also compatible with single phase (brushed) motors. However, because there are no Hall Sensors on a brushed motor, one of the following courses of action must be taken to properly commutate the drive:

- Set the Hall Sensor Commutation Phasing DIP switch for 60-degree phasing (SW1-2 = OFF). Leave all the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive open. These inputs are internally pulled high to +5V, creating a "1-1-1" commutation state (see Table 4.5 above) which is a valid state in 60-degree phasing. Only use Motor A and Motor B output in this configuration.

or:

- Tie one of the Hall Sensor inputs on the drive to signal ground. Since the Hall Sensor inputs are by default internally brought high to +5V, this will put the drive in a commutation state where two Hall inputs are high, and one is low (as shown in Table 4.5, having all three Hall inputs pulled high is an invalid commutation state in 120-degree phasing). Depending on which Hall Sensor input is tied to ground, consult Table 4.5 to determine which two motor output wires will be conducting current for that specific commutation state.

4.1.7 Tuning Procedure

The standard tuning values used in *ADVANCED* Motion Controls M/V motor drives are conservative and work well in over 90% of applications. However some applications and some

motors require more complete current loop tuning to achieve the desired performance. The following are indications that additional current loop tuning is necessary:

- Motor rapidly overheats even at low current
- Drive rapidly overheats even at low current
- Vibration sound comes from the drive or motor
- The motor has a high inductance (>5mH)
- The motor has a low inductance (near minimum rating of the drive)
- Slow system response times
- Excessive torque ripple
- Difficulty tuning position or velocity loops
- Electrical noise problems
- High power supply voltage (power supply is significantly higher than the motor voltage rating or near the drive's upper voltage limit)
- Low power supply voltage (power supply voltage is near the drive's lower voltage limit)

The above indicators are subjective and suggest that the current loop may need to be tuned. These can also be signs of other problems not related to current loop tuning.

The resistors and capacitors shown under the current control block on the datasheet block diagram determine the frequency response of the current loop. It is important to tune the current loop appropriately for the motor inductance and resistance, as well as the bus voltage to obtain optimum performance. M/V motor drives have a single current loop, and the loop gain and integrator capacitance of the current loop must both be adjusted for the tuning to be complete.



Caution

Improper current loop tuning may result in permanent drive and/or motor damage regardless of drive current limits.

Since most *ADVANCED* Motion Controls servo drives close the current loop internally, poor current loop tuning cannot be corrected with tuning from an external controller. Only after the current loop tuning is complete can optimal performance be achieved with the velocity and position loops.

The general current loop tuning procedure follows these steps:

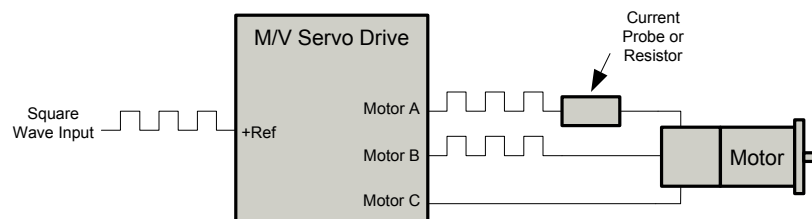
1. Determine if additional current loop tuning is necessary.
2. If current loop tuning is necessary, then the current loop components must be changed.
 - Tune the current loop proportional gain.
 - Tune the current loop integral gain.
3. Once the current loop is tuned, then the velocity and/or position loops may be tuned as well if necessary.

Current Loop Proportional Gain Adjustment The Current Loop Gain should be adjusted with the motor uncoupled from the load, and the motor secured as sudden motor shaft movement may occur. Keep in mind before beginning the tuning procedure that M/V

drives should be configured for 60 degree phasing in order to get output current. The current can be measured through either motor phase A or B.

1. Use the DIP switches and Current Limit Potentiometer to select Current Mode and to set the appropriate current limit for the motor.
2. Connect only the motor power leads to the drive. No other connections should be made at this point.
3. Using a function generator, apply a ± 0.5 V, 50-100 Hz square wave reference signal to the input reference pins.
4. Short out the current loop integrator capacitor by setting SW3 switches 1 through 5 to ON.
5. Apply power to the drive. Use a bus voltage that is approximate to the desired application voltage or the current loop compensation will not be correct.
6. The drive should be enabled (GREEN LED). Observe the motor current using a current probe or resistor in series with the motor (<10% of motor resistance). [Table 4.4](#) lists the different current loop gain resistor values available by adjusting SW3 switches 6 through 10. Observe the motor current at different resistor values until the best response is found. Set up the drive as shown below to view the current loop response properly.

FIGURE 4.2 Current Loop Response Setup



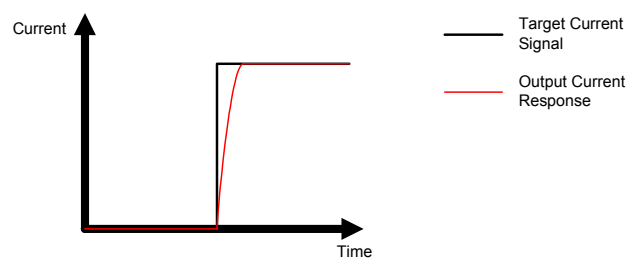
The current out of the drive can be forced to go through Motor A and Motor B by:

- 1) Disconnecting the Hall sensors from the drive
- 2) Setting the 60/120 degree phasing switch to 60 degrees

The motor shaft does not need to be locked since the drive will not commutate without the Hall Sensors.

7. The drive output should follow the input command. The best response will be a critically damped output waveform, similar to what is shown in [Figure 4.3](#).

FIGURE 4.3 Current Loop Response



8. If neither current loop gain DIP switch position gives a proper square wave response, then the current loop gain resistors may need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Through-hole Components”](#) on page 49 for more information.
9. When the proper response has been achieved, remove the input signal from the drive, and disconnect power.

Current Loop Integrator Adjustment

1. Enable the Current Loop Integrator Capacitor by setting SW3 switches 1 through 5 to OFF.
2. Using a function generator, apply a $\pm 0.5V$, 50-100 Hz square wave reference signal.
3. Apply power to the drive. Use a bus voltage that is approximate to the desired application voltage or the current loop compensation will not be correct.
4. The drive should be enabled (GREEN LED). Observe the motor current using a current probe or resistor in series with the motor ($<10\%$ of motor resistance). [Table 4.4](#) lists the different current loop integrator capacitor values available by adjusting SW3 switches 1 through 5. Observe the motor current at different capacitor values until the best response is found. The output should settle to a flat top with minimal current following error (difference between commanded current and actual current). There can be some overshoot, but it should be less than 10%.



Notice

Because the oscilloscope measurements are voltage representations of current, the commanded and actual currents will most likely have different current to voltage scalings and tolerances. Therefore, even with perfect current loop tuning, the two amplitudes (scope traces) may not line up as shown in [Figure 4.3](#).

5. If the square wave output overshoots too much or is over-damped (sluggish), the current loop integrator capacitor will need to be changed to optimize the response. See [“Through-hole Components” on page 49](#) for more information.

Voltage or Velocity Loop Tuning These adjustments should initially be performed with the motor uncoupled from the mechanical load.

Configure the drive for the desired operation mode using the DIP switch settings (see the block diagram on the specific drive datasheet).

- **Voltage Loop or Duty Cycle Loop**- Compensating the voltage loop requires the least amount of effort. Turn the Loop Gain potentiometer clockwise until oscillation occurs, then back off one turn.
- **IR Feedback Loop** - IR Compensation mode requires adding an additional through-hole resistor to the M/V motor controller PCB. **Note that any damage done to the drive while adding through-hole components or removing the cover seal rings will void the product warranty.** See [“Through-hole Components” on page 49](#) for information on adding additional through-hole components to the PCB.

Start with a very high (or open) IR feedback resistor with an unloaded motor shaft. Command a low motor speed (about 20-200 RPM). Without the IR feedback the motor shaft can be stalled easily. Decreasing the IR feedback resistor will make the motor shaft more difficult to stop. Too much IR feedback, i.e. too low a resistor value, will cause motor run-away when torque is applied to the motor shaft.

- **Velocity Loop (Encoder, Halls, or Tachometer)** - The velocity loop response is determined by the Loop Gain potentiometer. A larger resistance value (clockwise) results in a faster response. The velocity integrator capacitor can be used to compensate for a large load inertia. A large load inertia will require a larger capacitor value. Either using the DIP switches to add in extra capacitance or installing a through-hole capacitor may accomplish this (see [“Through-hole Components” on page 49](#) for more information). The need for an extra capacitor can be verified by shorting out the velocity integrator

capacitor by DIP switch setting. If the velocity loop is stable with the capacitor shorted out, and unstable with the capacitor in the circuit, then a larger capacitor value is needed.

Analog Position Loop • Use of an encoder or tachometer is recommended to obtain a responsive position loop, since the position loop is closed around the velocity loop. First the velocity loop must be stabilized (or voltage loop for undemanding applications). The position loop gain is determined by the fixed gain of the input differential amplifier of the drive. For best results the servo drive can be ordered with a higher differential gain.

Through-hole Components

In general, *ADVANCED* Motion Controls M/V motor controllers will not need to be further tuned with through-hole components. However, for applications requiring more precise tuning than what is offered by the DIP switches and potentiometers, or for applications operating in IR Compensation Mode, the drive can be manually modified with through-hole resistors and capacitors as denoted in [Table A.1](#) below. The through-hole locations are not populated when the drive is shipped.

It is recommended to contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls to discuss application requirements and proper drive tuning prior to making any adjustments.



Through-hole component locations are underneath the sealed cover. Any damage done to the drive or cover seal rings while performing these modifications will void the product warranty.

Before attempting to add through-hole components to the board for tuning purposes, see [“Tuning Procedure” on page 44](#). Some general rules to follow when adding through-hole components are:

- A larger resistor value will increase the proportional gain, and therefore create a faster response time.
- Use non-polarized capacitors.
- A larger capacitor value will increase the integration time, and therefore create a slower response time.

For applications using IR Compensation mode, an additional through-hole resistor is required for proper operation. [“Through-Hole Component Procedures”](#) below offers helpful guidelines in how to efficiently select and install a through-hole resistor. The final resistor value will be dependent on the application and system performance requirements. [“Voltage or Velocity Loop Tuning” on page 47](#) gives information on how to find the appropriate IR Compensation resistor value.

A.1 Through-Hole Component Procedures

Proper tuning using through-hole components will require careful observation of the loop response on a digital oscilloscope to find the optimal through-hole component values for the specific application.

The following are some helpful hints to make the loop tuning process easier:

- **Use pin receptacles to reduce the need for soldering** - Some drives have pin receptacles that make it easy to change the tuning resistors and capacitors without the need for soldering. Other drives do not have these receptacles, so soldering is required. To avoid the need to solder every time a tuning value needs to be changed a pin receptacle can be soldered into the through-hole location of the tuning component.
- **Use a potentiometer to find the correct current loop gain value** - A potentiometer can be used to continuously adjust the gain resistance value during the tuning process. Install a potentiometer in place of the gain resistor. Adjust the potentiometer while viewing the current loop response on an oscilloscope. When the optimal response is achieved turn off the drive, remove the potentiometer, and measure the potentiometer resistance. Use the closest resistor value available. (Note: This method will not work if the optimal tuning value is beyond the range of the potentiometer).
- **Progressively double the resistance value when tuning the current loop gain for faster results** - If the gain resistor needs to be increased during the tuning process the fastest results are achieved by doubling the resistance from the last value tried. Use this method until overshoot is observed and then fine tune from there.
- **Be aware of any components that are in parallel with the values you are trying to tune** - There may be one or more gain resistors in parallel with the through-hole resistor location. The equivalent resistance value of the SMT resistor(s) on the board and the additional through-hole resistor will be limited by the smallest resistance value of the group of resistors in parallel. Consult the block diagram on the drive datasheet to determine the specific resistor values. The same situation can occur when trying to decrease the integrator capacitor value, since capacitors in parallel will be added together.
- **Safety**



Always remove power when changing components on the drive.



Float the oscilloscope and function generator grounds to avoid large ground currents.



Decouple the motor from the load to avoid being injured by sudden motor movements.

Table A.1 lists the different through-hole components that can be used for loop tuning. Consult the drive datasheet to see which options are available for a specific drive. Please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls Applications Engineering for assistance in determining the PCB location of the through-hole component options for the drive model in use.

TABLE A.1 Through-Hole Tuning Component

Component	Description
Current Loop Integrator Capacitor	Through-hole capacitor that can be added for more precise current loop tuning.
Velocity Loop Integrator Capacitor	Through-hole capacitor that can be added for more precise velocity loop tuning.

A.1.1 Procedure

Before changing any components on the PCB, follow the steps in “[Tuning Procedure](#)” on [page 44](#) to determine if any additional tuning is necessary. Observe the drive output current response on an oscilloscope for all the different DIP switch proportional and integral gain settings. If further tuning is necessary or desired, please contact *ADVANCED* Motion Controls before proceeding through the through following steps.

Tune the Current Loop Integral Gain

1. After the proportional gain resistance has been adjusted to an acceptable value using SW3 switches 6 through 10, re-enable the current loop integrator capacitor (SW1-7=ON).
2. Observe the drive current response on an oscilloscope. Small step tuning is different than large step tuning, so adjust the function generator square wave amplitude so the drive outputs a current step similar to what will be expected in typical operation.
3. The current loop integrator capacitor can be changed or shorted out of the circuit by DIP switch setting. Test both settings while observing the current loop response.
 - If the current response square wave oscillates or overshoots, a larger equivalent capacitance value is necessary.
 - If the current response square wave corners are too rounded, a smaller equivalent capacitance value is necessary to sharpen the corners.
4. Finding an acceptable equivalent capacitance may take a few iterations. Using pin receptacles at the through-hole locations will greatly assist in finding an acceptable capacitance value. Also keep in mind that the through-hole capacitor location may be in parallel with SMT capacitors on the PCB. Use the block diagram on the drive datasheet to determine the equivalent integrator capacitance value (capacitors in parallel add together).
5. Although the ideal current loop response after integral gain tuning will be a critically damped square wave, the application requirements will determine what the desired response will be (i.e. how much overshoot, steady-state error, oscillation, is acceptable).

Velocity Loop Integral Gain Tuning The velocity loop proportional gain is adjusted by the on-board Loop Gain potentiometer. The velocity loop integral gain can be adjusted by DIP switch settings similar to the current loop integral gain (capacitance value can be changed, capacitor can be shorted out, extra capacitor can be added in parallel). M/V drive models also include an additional through-hole location where a through-hole capacitor can be added to further adjust the velocity loop integral gain. As in tuning the current loop integral gain, use larger value equivalent capacitance to correct for overshoot or oscillation, and smaller value equivalent capacitance for a quicker response time.

B.1 Specifications Tables

TABLE B.1 Power Specifications

Description	Units	A_250A060	A_200A100	A_125A200	A_100C200
DC Supply Voltage Range	VDC	20-54	20-80	40-175	40-175
DC Bus Over Voltage Limit	VDC	59	92	190	190
DC Bus Under Voltage Limit	VDC	18	16	36	36
Logic Supply Voltage (Keyswitch) - AVB models only	VDC	20-54	20-80	40-175	40-175
Maximum Peak Output Current ¹	A	250	200	125	100
Maximum Continuous Output Current	A	150	125	80	100
Maximum Continuous Output Power	W	7695	9500	13300	16625
Maximum Power Dissipation at Continuous Current	W	405	500	700	875
Internal Bus Capacitance	μF	12600	6000	3840	3840
Minimum Load Inductance ²	μH	200	250	300	300
Switching Frequency	kHz	14.5	14.6	14.5	14.6
Maximum Output PWM Duty Cycle	%	100	100	100	100

1. Maximum duration of zero-to-peak current commands is ~10 seconds for AVB drives and ~5 seconds for AB drives. Maximum duration of peak-to-peak current commands is ~10 seconds for AB drives. Peak-to-peak current commands should not be performed with AVB drives.
2. Lower inductance is acceptable for bus voltages well below maximum. Use external inductance to meet requirements.

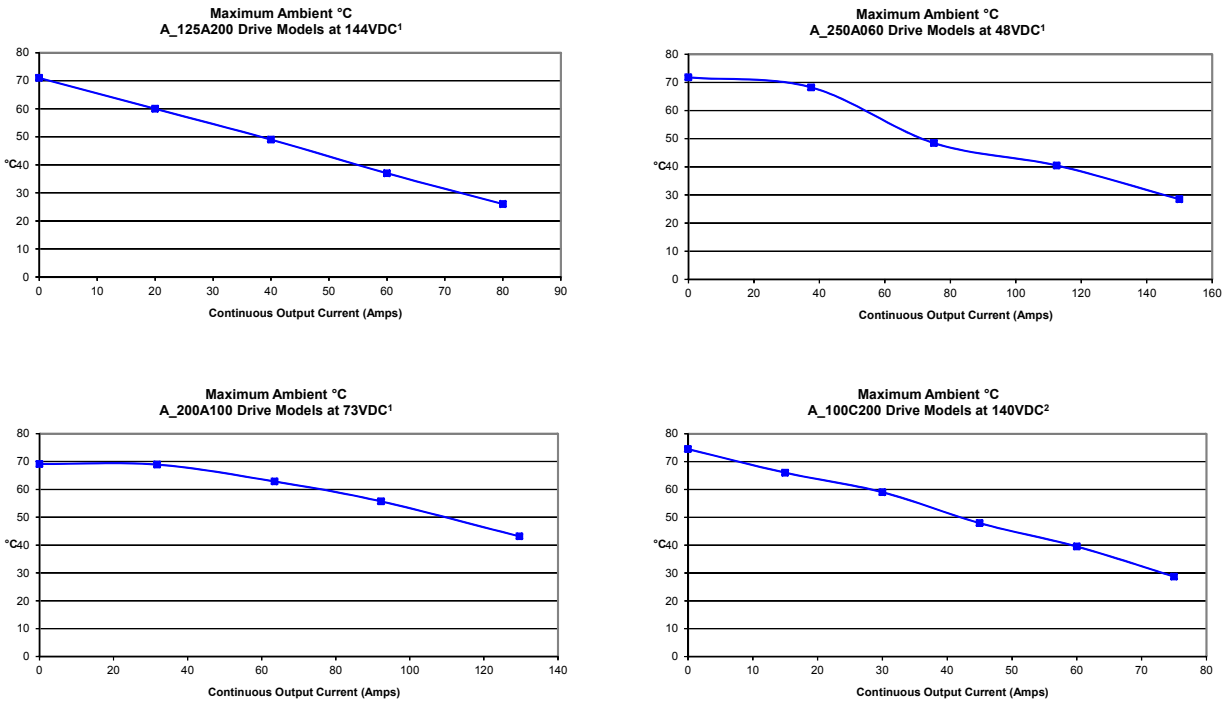
TABLE B.2 Control Specifications

Control Specifications		
Description	AVB	AB
Command Sources	0-5V Analog, 0-5kΩ	±10V Analog
Commutation Methods	Trapezoidal	
Control Modes	Current, Voltage, IR Compensation, Duty Cycle (Open Loop), Hall Velocity, Encoder Velocity, Tachometer Velocity	
Motors Supported	Three Phase Single Phase	

TABLE B.3 Standard Environmental Specifications

Environmental Specifications	
Parameter	Description
Baseplate Temperature Range	0 - 75 °C (32 - 167 °F)
Humidity	90%, non-condensing
Mechanical Shock	10g, 11ms, Half-sine
Vibration	2 - 2000 Hz @ 2.5g
Altitude	0-3000m
IP Rating	IP65

FIGURE B.1 Ambient Temperature Ranges



1. Heatsink used is 8 7/8" x 10 3/4" x 2 3/8" finned heatsink with 36 cfm air flow on heatsink.
2. Heatsink used is 15" x 27 7/8" x 5/8" aluminum plate heatsink with 260 cfm air flow on heatsink. For output currents above 75 A, additional cooling and/or heatsinking is required.

TABLE B.4 Physical Dimensions

Description	Units	
Height	mm (in)	203.2 (8.0)
Width	mm (in)	139.7 (5.5)
Depth	mm (in)	59.7 (2.4)
Depth (with 23-pin AMPSEAL connector installed)	mm (in)	74.0 (2.9)
Weight	kg (oz)	1.64 (57.8)

This section discusses how to ensure optimum performance and, if necessary, get assistance from the factory.

C.1 Fault Conditions and Symptoms

An inoperative drive can indicate any of the following fault conditions:

- over-temperature
- over-voltage
- under-voltage
- short-circuits
- invalid commutation
- inhibit input
- power-on reset

All of the above fault conditions are self-reset by the drive. Once the fault condition is removed the drive will become operative again without cycling power. To determine whether the drive is in a fault state, measure the “[Fault Output](#)” pin with a digital multimeter or voltmeter. A high at this pin (or a low, depending on the drive model and configuration - see drive datasheet) will indicate that the drive is subject to one of the above fault conditions, and the drive will be disabled until the drive is no longer in a fault state. To remove the fault condition, follow the instructions in the sections below describing each possible fault state.

Over-Temperature Verify that the baseplate temperature is less than the maximum allowable baseplate temperature as denoted on the drive datasheet, 75°C (167°F). The drive remains disabled until the temperature at the drive baseplate falls below this threshold.

Over-Voltage Shutdown

1. Check the DC power supply voltage for a value above the drive over-voltage shutdown limit. If the DC bus voltage is above this limit, check the AC power line connected to the DC power supply for proper value.
2. Check the regenerative energy absorbed during deceleration. This is done by monitoring the DC bus voltage with a voltmeter or oscilloscope. If the DC bus voltage increases above the drive over-voltage shutdown limit during deceleration or regeneration, a shunt regulator may be necessary. See “[Regeneration and Shunt Regulators](#)” on page 19 for more information.

Under-Voltage Shutdown Verify power supply voltages for minimum conditions per specifications. Also note that the drive will pull the power supply voltage down if the power supply cannot provide the required current for the drive. This could occur when high current is demanded and the power supply is pulled below the minimum operating voltage required by the drive.

Short Circuit Fault

1. Check each motor lead for shorts with respect to motor housing and power ground. If the motor is shorted it will not rotate freely when no power is applied while it is uncoupled from the load.
2. Disconnect the motor leads to see if the drive will enable without the motor connected. If the drive enables with the motor disconnected, there is a possible short circuit in the motor wiring.
3. Measure motor armature resistance between motor leads with the drive disconnected. Verify these measurements against the motor datasheet to determine if there is a short or open circuit in the motor windings.

Invalid Hall Sensor State See the “Commutation Sequence” table in “Hall Sensors” on page 10 for valid commutation states. If the drive is disabled check the following:

1. Make sure that the Hall Sensor Commutation Phasing switch is in the correct setting per motor data sheets. When driving a single phase (brushed type) motor with a three phase (brushless) drive use the 60-degree phase setting (see “Brushed Motor Setup” on page 44 for more information on this particular configuration).
2. Check the voltage levels for all the Hall Sensor inputs. Turn the motor by hand while measuring the Hall Sensor inputs to verify that all three Hall Sensors are changing. The voltage should read approximately +5V for a “high (1)” Hall state, and approximately 0V for a “low (0)” Hall state.
3. Make sure all Hall Sensor lines are connected properly.

Inhibit Input Check inhibit input for correct polarity (that is, pull-to-ground to inhibit or pull-to-ground to enable). Inhibit configuration depends either on the DIP switch settings or a 0 ohm SMT resistor marked on the board. Also, keep in mind that noise on the inhibit line could be a cause for a false inhibit signal being given to the drive.

Power-On Reset All drives have a power-on reset function to ensure that all circuitry on the board is functional prior to enabling the drive. The board will only be disabled momentarily, and will quickly enable upon power up.

C.1.1 Overload

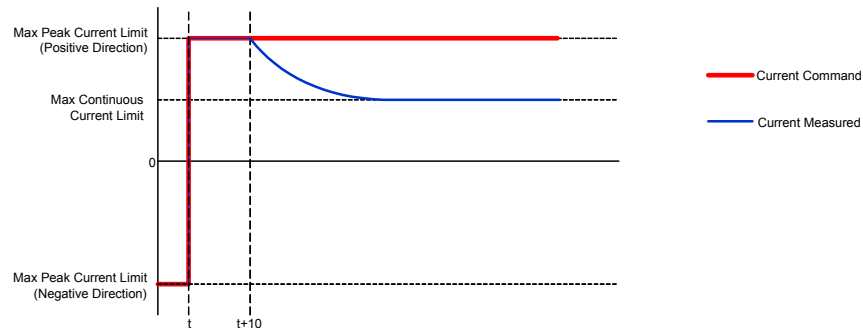
Verify that the minimum inductance requirement is met. If the inductance is too low it could appear like a short circuit to the drive and thus it might cause the short circuit fault to trip. Excessive heating of the drive and motor is also characteristic of the minimum inductance requirement not being met. See drive datasheet for minimum inductance requirements.

C.1.2 Current Limiting

M/V servo drives incorporate a “fold-back” circuit for protection against over-current. This “fold-back” circuit uses an approximate “ I^2t ” algorithm to protect the drive.

- Maximum peak current output level can be sustained for about 10 seconds.
- To actually achieve maximum peak current output for 10 seconds requires the current command to fully swing from peak in one direction to the other.

FIGURE C.1 Maximum Peak Current Foldback

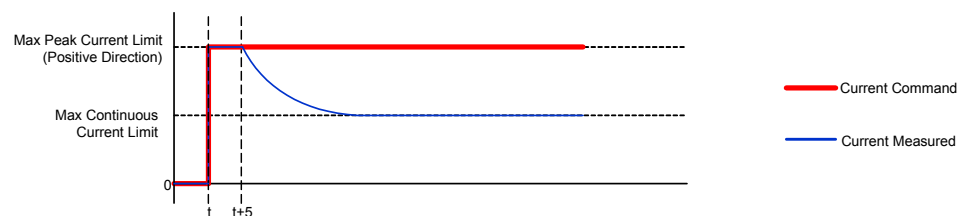


Caution

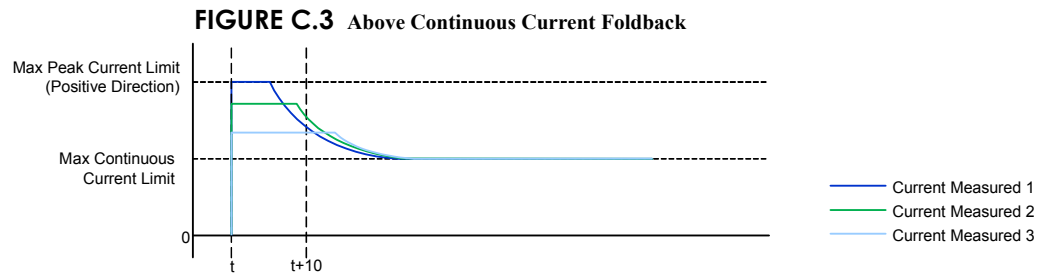
Sustained maximum current demand, when switching between positive and negative maximum current without allowing sufficient time for fold-back, will result in drive damage. Drive RMS current should be below the continuous current setting!

- For most applications, it’s a rare occurrence to fully swing from peak in one direction to the other. It is more likely the drive will be commanded from zero to max peak current. Under this condition, the drive will sustain the maximum peak current for about five seconds for AB drives or 10 seconds for AVB drives.

FIGURE C.2 Peak Current Foldback



- Commanding maximum peak current output starting from above zero command will also yield reduced peak current output time.
- When commanding output current less than the max peak limit, but more than the max continuous limit, the current output can be sustained for a longer time period than a maximum peak command before folding back.



- The closer the commanded current is to the peak current limit, the shorter the peak output time will be.
- Any command at or below the maximum continuous current limit can be achieved for as long as there are no fault conditions present.
- When the drive is configured for any of the velocity modes, the user is no longer in direct control of the current output. The current commands will be determined by the velocity loop. Though internally the current loop still functions like it is described above, it will do only what is necessary to meet the velocity demand. The current output will be heavily dependent on:
 - How tight the velocity loop is tuned
 - The load characteristics
 - The speed the motor is already turning
 - Magnitude and slope of velocity step

C.1.3 Motor Problems

A motor run-away condition is when the motor spins rapidly with no control from the command input. The most likely cause of this error comes from having the feedback element connected for positive feedback. This can be solved by changing the order that the feedback element lines are connected to the drive, or changing the feedback polarity switch on the DIP switch bank to the opposite setting.

Another common motor issue for brushless motors with Hall Sensor commutation is when the motor spins faster in one direction than in the other for the same velocity command in the opposite direction. This is typically caused by improper commutation, usually because the motor power wires are connected in the wrong order with respect to the Hall Sensor wiring. Try all six combinations of connecting the motor power wires to the drive to find the correct commutation order. The proper combination of motor wires will yield smooth motion and identical speeds in both directions. Improper combinations will cause jerky motion, slow movement in one direction, and/or audible noise. As a final verification that the commutation is correct, use the Velocity Monitor Output pin to measure motor speed in both directions. This can also be caused by invalid Hall phasing. Check to see if the drive is set for 120- or 60-degree phasing, and verify that the drive DIP switch setting corresponds to the Hall phasing used on the motor. See [“Hall Sensors” on page 10](#) for more information.

C.1.4 Causes of Erratic Operation

- Improper grounding (i.e. drive signal ground is not connected to source signal ground).
- Noisy command signal. Check for system ground loops.

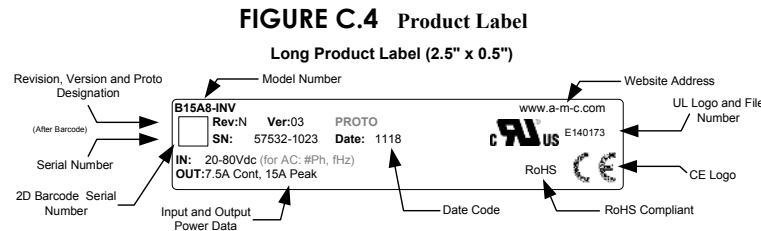
- Mechanical backlash, dead-band, slippage, etc.
- Noisy inhibit input line.
- Excessive voltage spikes on bus.

C.2 Technical Support

For help from the manufacturer regarding drive set-up or operating problems, please gather the following information.

C.2.1 Product Label Description

The following is a typical example of a product label as it is found on the drive:



1. **Model Number:** This is the main product identifier. The model number can have a suffix designating a change from the base model.
2. **Revision Letter:** Product revision level letter ('A' is the earliest release from any model).
3. **Version:** The version number is used to track minor product upgrades with the same model number and revision letter ('01' is the earliest release of any revision).
4. **Proto Designation:** When included, indicates that the model is a prototype unit and model number will also begin with an 'X' designator.
5. **Serial Number:** The serial number consists of a 5-digit lot number followed by a 4-digit sequence number. Each product is assigned a unique serial number to track product life cycle history.
6. **Date Code:** The date code is a 4-digit number signifying the year and week of manufacture. The first two digits designate the year and the second two digits designate the week (e.g. the drive label shown would have been built in the year 2011 during the 18th week).
7. **Input and Output Power Data:** Includes basic power parameters of the product.
8. **General Information:** Displays applicable agency approvals, UL file reference number, and compliance approvals. More complete product information is available by following the listed website.

C.2.2 Drive System and Application Information

- DC bus voltage and range
- Motor type (brushed, brushless, AC induction)
- Motor characteristics (inductance, torque constant, winding resistance, etc.)
- Position of all DIP switches

- Length and make-up of all wiring and cables
- If brushless, include Hall sensor information
- Type of controller
- Full description of feedback devices
- Description of problem: instability, run-away, noise, over/under shoot, etc.
- Complete part number and serial number of the product. Original purchase order is helpful, but not necessary

C.3 Warranty Returns and Factory Help

Seller warrants that all items will be delivered free from defects in material and workmanship and in conformance with contractual requirements. The Seller makes no other warranties, express or implied and specifically NO WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. The Seller's exclusive liability for breach of warranty shall be limited to repairing or replacing at the Seller's option items returned to Seller's plant at Buyer's expense within one year of the date of delivery. The Seller's liability on any claim of any kind, including negligence, for loss or damage arising out of, connected with or resulting from this order, or from the performance or breach thereof or from the manufacture, sale, delivery, resale, repair or use of any item or services covered by or furnished under this order shall in no case exceed the price allocable to the item or service or part thereof which gives rise to the claim and in the event Seller fails to manufacture or deliver items other than standard products that appear in Seller's catalog. Seller's exclusive liability and Buyer's exclusive remedy shall be release of the Buyer from the obligation to pay the purchase price. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SELLER BE LIABLE FOR SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. Buyer will take all appropriate measures to advise users and operators of the products delivered hereunder of all potential dangers to persons or property, which may be occasioned by such use. Buyer will indemnify and hold Seller harmless from all claims of any kind for injuries to persons and property arising from use of the products delivered hereunder. Buyer will, at its sole cost, carry liability insurance adequate to protect Buyer and Seller against such claims.

All returns (warranty or non-warranty) require that you first obtain a Return Material Authorization (RMA) number from the factory. Request an RMA number by:

web	www.a-m-c.com/download/form/form_rma.html
telephone	(805) 389-1935
fax	(805) 389-1165

Symbols

±10V Analog Input Wiring 33

A

 Agency Compliances ii
 Altitude 23, 52
 Ambient Temperature Range 53
 Analog Position Loop Tuning 48
 Attention Symbols iii

B

 Baseplate Temperature Range 23, 52
 Brushless Servo Drives 7
 Brushless Servo System 7

C

 Capacitive Interference Coupling 29
 CE-EMC Wiring Requirements 26
 Central Point Grounding 28
 Command Inputs 8
 Command Sources 5, 52
 Commutation Methods 5, 52
 Commutation Sequence Table 10, 44
 Company Website ii
 Continuous Output Current 5, 52
 Continuous Regeneration 22
 Control Modes 5, 52
 Control Specifications 52
 Controller Chassis 28
 Current (Torque) Mode 11
 Current Limit Potentiometer 39
 Current Limiting 42, 57
 Current Loop Gain 45
 Current Loop Integrator 47
 Current Monitor Output 37

D

 Daisy Chains 31
 DC Bus Over Voltage Limit 5, 52
 DC Bus Under Voltage Limit 5, 52
 DC Supply Voltage Range 5, 52
 DIP Switch Settings 40
 Drive Case Grounding 28
 Drive Datasheet 4
 Drive Set-up Instructions 43–48
 Duty Cycle Mode 12

Dwell Time 15

E

 Electromagnetic Interference 29
 Encoder Velocity Mode 12
 Environmental Specifications 23, 52
 Error Signal 9
 External Filter Card 16

F

 Fault Conditions 55–57
 Fault Output 38
 Feedback Polarity 9
 Feedback Specifications 9–11
 Feedback Wiring 32–33
 Fold-back 57
 Frequency Factor 22

G

 Ground Loops 28, 31
 Grounding 28

H

 Hall Sensors
 Feedback 10
 Wiring 32
 Hall Velocity Mode 12
 Humidity 23, 52

I

 Impedance 29
 Incremental Encoder
 Feedback 9
 Wiring 32
 Inhibit Input 38, 56
 Input Reference Wiring 33–34
 Interference Coupling 29
 Invalid Hall Commutation 56
 IR Compensation Mode 13
 IR Feedback Loop Tuning 47
 Isolated Power Supply 19
 Isolation 19

L

 Linear Motor Equation 15
 Lock-out/tag-out Procedures 1

 Loop Gain Potentiometer 39
 Low Voltage Power Outputs 38
 LVD Requirements 25

M

 Magnetic Interference Coupling ... 29
 Max. Power Dissipation 5, 52
 Mechanical Shock 23, 52
 Minimum Load Inductance 5, 52
 Model Mask 5
 Modes of Operation 11–13
 Current (Torque) 11
 Duty Cycle (Open Loop) 12
 Encoder Velocity 12
 Hall Velocity 12
 IR Compensation 13
 Tachometer Velocity 13
 Voltage Mode 13
 Motion Control System 6
 Motor "Run-Away" 9
 Motor Back-EMF Voltage 16
 Motor Chassis 28
 Motor Current 15, 17
 Motor Current Frequency 16
 Motor Force 16
 Motor Inductance 3, 16
 Overload 56
 Motor Problems 58
 Motor Resistance 16
 Motor Run-Away 58
 Motor Torque Constant 15
 Motor Voltage 15, 17
 Motor Wiring 30
 Motors Supported 5, 52
 Mounting Diagrams 54
 Mounting Options 36
 Move Profile 14
 Multiple Power Supply Wiring 31

N

 Negative Feedback 9
 Noise 29
 Nominal Power Supply Voltage 17

O

 Overload 56
 Over-Temperature 55

Over-Voltage Shutdown	55	Regeneration	19, 20	Through-hole Components	49
P		Continuous	22	Torque	15
Part Numbering Structure	5	Returns	60	Trademarks	ii
PE Ground	28	Revision History	iii	Troubleshooting	55–60
Peak Current Fold-back	57	RMS Torque	15	Tuning	
Peak Output Current	5, 52	S		Procedure	44–48
Peak Torque	15	Safety	1–3	Through-Hole Components	49–51
Physical Dimensions	53	Scaling Factor	12	Twisted Pair Wires	29
Pin Functions	37–39	Selection and Sizing	14–23	U	
Positive Feedback	9	Servo Drive Theory	6–7	Under-Voltage Shutdown	56
Potentiometer Functions	39	Shielding	28, 29	V	
Potentiometer Tool	40	Shock/Vibration	24	Velocity Loop Tuning	47
Power Ground	28	Short Circuit Fault	56	Velocity Monitor Output	39
Power Outputs, Low Voltage	38	Shunt Regulator	18, 19	Velocity Scaling Factor	39
Power Specifications	52	Signal Ground	28	Vibration	23, 52
Power Supply Capacitance .. 2, 22, 31		Specifications Tables	52–54	Voltage Drop Interference	29
Power Supply Chassis	28	Switch Functions	40	Voltage Loop Tuning	47
Power Supply Current	18	Switching Frequency	5, 52	Voltage Mode	13
Power Supply Output Current 17, 22		System Requirements	14–23	Voltage Ripple	22
Power Supply Wiring	31	System Voltage Requirement	15	W	
Power-on Reset	56	T		Warning Symbols	iii
Product Label	59	Tachometer		Warranty Info	60
Protective Earth	28	Feedback	11	Warranty Returns	60
PWM Current Control Circuit	6	Velocity Mode	13	Wire Diameter	29
R		Wiring	33	Wire Gauge	29
REF IN, -	33	Technical Support	59	Wiring	29–35
REF IN, +	33	Test/Offset Potentiometer	39		
Reference Gain Potentiometer	39	Three Phase Servo Drives	7		

M/V Product Family
Hardware Installation Manual
MNALMVIN-02



3805 Calle Tecate • Camarillo, CA 93012-5068
Tel: (805) 389-1935 Fax: (805) 389-1165 www.a-m-c.com